

OTHER WORKS
PRINTED
FOR THE USE OF THE ABYSSINIAN MISSION.

BY REV. C. W. ISENBERG:

AMHARIC SPELLING BOOK. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

AMHARIC CATECHISM. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

AMHARIC GEOGRAPHY. 8vo. 3s. cloth.

HISTORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD, in AMHARIC. 8vo. — PART I.
History of the Old Covenant, to the Destruction of Jerusalem, and the Death
of St. John. — PART II. History of the Church, from the Death of St. John, to
our Times. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

DICTIONARY of the AMHARIC LANGUAGE. 4to. £2.

UNIVERSAL HISTORY in AMHARIC. 8vo. 4s.

VOCABULARY of the DANKALI LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

BY REV. J. L. KRAPF:

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL, Five Chapters, in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6d.

GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE of the GALLA LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

WORKS IN THE PRESS:

BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER for the United Church of England and Ireland,
in AMHARIC, by Rev. C. W. ISENBERG. 8vo.

VOCABULARY of the GALLA LANGUAGE, by Rev. J. L. KRAPF. 12mo.

GRAMMAR
OF THE
AMHARIC LANGUAGE.

BY THE
REV. CHARLES WILLIAM ISENBERG,
AUTHOR OF THE "AMHARIC DICTIONARY,"
AND MISSIONARY OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY
IN EAST AFRICA.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY.
—
1842.

PREFACE.

IN presenting this work to the Public, the Author offers his humble thanks to God, for having enabled him to accomplish it. He was aware, when he first set his hand to it, not only of its importance with regard to Abyssinia—its character, religion, history, and destinies—but also of the difficulty of the task which he had undertaken. There was previously no Amharic Grammar extant, except Ludolf's*; which, however it attests the superior talents of its author, considering the circumstances under which it was compiled, is but a feeble aid in the grammatical exhibition of the language. Nor was there any other literary source, on which the Author of this Grammar could draw, except the Amharic Bible, and those Amharic works which he himself had prepared. Under these circumstances, he had very often to feel out his way, by a recollection of the living language, in which he conversed with the Abyssinian people while residing among them. This recollection, however, was kept alive by the Author's having been, without interruption, occupied with the Amharic press, from his arrival in this country from Abyssinia up to this day. The preparation and publication of the Lexicon, immediately preceding his commencement of this Grammar, was peculiarly suited to prepare him for this work; for whilst, on the one hand, it laid open to him the whole of the materials of which that language is composed, as far as they are at present known, it furnished him also with ample opportunities to investigate the grammatical rules by which it is regulated. Every one, who has

* See Preface to my Amharic Dictionary.

a judgment in these matters, will discover, when comparing the Dictionary with the Grammar, that the Author's own knowledge of the language has improved as he has advanced in his editorial labours. But although he is aware of the imperfections of his own works, he feels confident that a diligent study of this Grammar will, under the blessing of the Almighty, materially assist any Student in acquiring an accurate knowledge of the Amharic Language.

Although there is, as yet, no literature in the Amharic Language, its study is of considerable importance to Orientalists. Its Semitic origin cannot be questioned: it is evident in every feature. A little attention to what is said in this Grammar on the Nouns and Verbs, shows that it possesses a vigour and flexibility capable of expressing any idea; and that it may be very useful in throwing light on many subjects of difficulty in the cognate languages, especially the Hebrew, Syriac, and Coptic. Such a language, it is but reasonable to suppose, will be found rich in words. The Dictionary, which gives only those words which we at present possess, contains about 7000; and we may anticipate that a longer and more intimate acquaintance with the people of Abyssinia will furnish us with a great many more, and lead to important results, not only in reference to the Semitic, but also to the African Languages. With the latter the Amharic has much mutual interchange; as the Author has had opportunities to observe, in respect to the languages of the Danakil*, the Somal, the Gallas†, the Argobbans, the natives of Harrar (or Arargê), and those of Garaguê. But the advantages to be derived from the study of this language, which should be accompanied by that of its parent language, the Ethiopic, are not merely of a scientific

* See Dankali Vocabulary.

† See the Rev. J. L. Krapf's Galla Grammar, his Translation of St. Matthew's Gospel, and his Galla Vocabulary.

nature. When the covetous Abyssinian offers his hidden treasures to the speculating European—when he opens his barriers to the travelling naturalist, to explore his Ambas and his K'wallas—when that country, which stands single in the whole history of Eastern Nations, as a Christian State that was not overwhelmed by the sweeping floods of Islamism, attracts different and, in some measure, conflicting interests of religion, philanthropy and politics—the study of the living Abyssinian Languages, among which the Amharic stands foremost, will become indispensable; as is already experienced by those whom various motives induce to travel in Abyssinia.

With regard to the Church Missionary Society, the Author begs to repeat the same expressions of sincere gratitude, respect and solicitude, which he has uttered in the Preface to his Dictionary. Whatever the result of the present movements concerning Abyssinia and its future destinies may be; whether that nation is still to remain in its present uncivilized condition; whether it be doomed to fall a prey to that Spiritual Power which is assiduously endeavouring to regain the influence which it formerly possessed for a time, or whether it will open itself to the sound of the Gospel and its accompanying temporal and eternal blessings, and emerge into the light of truth and civilization; this Society has been the first instrument, in the hand of God, to offer the hand of Christian assistance and fellowship to them. If it pleases God to prosper their labours of love, they will be amply rewarded for all the difficulties and disappointments they have been subjected to, or which may be still awaiting them. May His blessing be upon them!

C. W. ISENBERG.

LONDON, *Jan* 4, 1842.

ERRATA.

<i>Page</i>	<i>Line</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>Read</i>	<i>for</i>
18	12	top,	First	Second.
28	11	. . .	ልቅሶ፡	ልቅሳ፡
31	12	. . .	ቆርቆር፡	ቆርቆር፡
38	4	bottom,	አይሁድ፡	አይሁድ፡
39	11	. . .	Form	From.
42	11	. . .	Twelfth	Eleventh.
48	17	top,	Suffixes	all Suffixes.
53	14	. . .	መገተ፡	መገተ፡
58	13	. . .	ተሺጠ፡	ተሺሐ፡
63	8	. . .	III.	3.
..	9	. . .	IV.	4.
64	14	. . .	አሉ፡	ኦሉ፡
65	23	. . .	Regular Triliteral	Triliteral.
81	4	. . .	conjugation	verb.
83	5	bottom,	መናገር፡	መናገሩ፡
88	8	. . .	ይሰጥብራሉ፡	ይሰጥብራሉ፡
..	2	. . .	ይሰጥብሩ፡	ይሰጥብሩ፡
90	7	top,	ያደራርግ፡	ያደራርግ፡
93	17	. . .	the peculiarities	and the peculiarities.
..	20	. . .	Radical	Conjugation.
119	10	. . .	ሺጣችሁ፡	ሲጣችሁ፡
129	4	. . .	አለመለመ፡	አለምለም፡
133	6	. . .	ይኩብለል፡	ከኩብለል፡
139	10	. . .	የሚያህል፡	የሚያህ፡ ለ
145	5	bottom,	ይመግብዋት፡	ይመግቡት፡
146	11	. . .	thee	them.
147	10	. . .	መግብዋችኋል፡	መግብዋዋችል፡
...	1	. . .	chapters	chapter.
149	16	top,	ዝም፡	ዘም፡
...	26	. . .	ፈቀቅ፡	ፈቀቅ፡
150	9	. . .	"without"	"within."
152	6	. . .	ለምንድር፡	ለመንድር፡
158	20	. . .	ከ—፡	ካ—፡
168	16	. . .	ሰደደ፡	ለደደ፡
174	15	. . .	show	to show.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	PAGE 1.
--------------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---------

PART I. PHONOLOGY.

ON THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

CHAP. I. On the Amharic Alphabet	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3
CHAP. II. Numerical Order and Names of the Letters	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	4
CHAP. III. Virtue, Organical Classification, and Pronunciation of the Letters,	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6
CHAP. IV. Seven Vocal Orders of the Abyssinian Letters	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	8
CHAP. V. On Syllabification	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	11
CHAP. VI. On Accentuation, and Interpunctuation	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	13
CHAP. VII. Various Changes of Letters :									
1. Addition	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	16
2. Contraction	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	16
3. Elision	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	18
4. Changes produced and undergone by the letter P : and its corresponding Vowels, I and Ê	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	19
5. Changes produced and undergone by the letter W : and its corresponding Vowels, U and O	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	20
6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	21
7. Reduplication of Letters	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	21
8. Exchange of Letters	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	21
9. Changes occurring with the Liquid Letters	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	22
10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	22

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

Preliminary Remarks	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	23
CHAP. I. On the Nouns :									
SECT. I. Formation	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	24
SECT. II. Species	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	35
SECT. III. Gender	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	36
SECT. IV. Number	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	38
SECT. V. Declension	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	40
CHAP. II. On the Numerals	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	41

CONTENTS.

CHAP. III. On the Pronouns :

SECT. I.	Separable Personal Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	43
SECT. II.	Separable Possessive Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	45
SECT. III.	Demonstrative Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	45
SECT. IV.	Interrogative Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	46
SECT. V.	Reflective Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	47
SECT. VI.	Separable Distributive Pronoun	-	-	-	-	-	47
SECT. VII.	Indefinite Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	48
SECT. VIII. Inseparable Pronouns :							
1.	Personal Suffixes to Verbs	-	-	-	-	-	48
2.	Possessive Suffixes to Nouns	-	-	-	-	-	49
3.	Prefixes Relative Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	50
4.	Prefixes Distributive Pronoun	-	-	-	-	-	50

CHAP. IV. On the Verbs :

SECT. I.	Formation and Quality	-	-	-	-	-	50
SECT. II.	Various Derivations (Forms or Voices)	-	-	-	-	-	52
List of Conjugations (Derivations, Voices) of the Regular and Perfect Triliteral Verb							53

Other Classes :

i.	Triliterals whose first Radical is a Guttural	-	-	-	-	55
ii.	Geminant Triliterals	-	-	-	-	56
iii.	Geminants whose first Radical is a Guttural	-	-	-	-	56
iv.	Perfect Biliterals	-	-	-	-	56
v.	Imperfect Biliterals of Prima ħ	-	-	-	-	57
vi. Defective Verbs :						
1.	Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural at the End	-	-	-	-	57
2.	Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle	-	-	-	-	58
3.	Verbs with an Absorbed P: in the Middle	-	-	-	-	58
4.	Verbs with an Absorbed Θ: in the Middle	-	-	-	-	58
5.	Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadriliterals	-	-	-	-	58
6.	Verbs doubly Imperfect	-	-	-	-	59
vii. Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs :						
1.	Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals	-	-	-	-	59
2.	Derivatives from Triliterals, having one Radical dou- bled and transposed	-	-	-	-	60
3.	Geminants	-	-	-	-	60
4.	Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals	-	-	-	-	61

CONTENTS.

SECT. III. Flexion :

I. Moods	- - - - -	61
II. Tenses	- - - - -	62
III. Number	- - - - -	63
IV. Persons	- - - - -	63

SECT. IV. Conjugation :

Auxiliaries አል : ነበረ : and ነወ :	- - - - -	64
1. Conjugation of the Perfect and Regular Triliteral Verbs		65
2. Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of Triliteral Verbs :		
I. Triliteral Verbs whose first Radical is A (አ : or ዐ :),		93
II. Triliteral Geminants	- - - - -	96
III. Geminants whose first Radical is አ :	- - - - -	102
3. Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs :		
I. Perfect Biliterals	- - - - -	104
II. Imperfect Biliterals <i>primæ radicalis</i> አ :	- - - - -	108
III. Contracted Biliterals :		
(aa) With Absorbed Guttural at the End	- - - - -	113
(bb) With Absorbed Guttural in the Middle	- - - - -	116
(cc) With Absorbed ፑ : in the Middle	- - - - -	118
(dd) With Absorbed ዐ : in the middle	- - - - -	120
IV. Doubly Imperfect Biliterals ;		
(aa) Doubly Contracted	- - - - -	123
(bb) Beginning with አ : and terminating with an Absorbed Guttural	- - - - -	124
(cc) Beginning with ፑ : , which absorbs a Guttural,		126
4. Conjugations of Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs :		
I. Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals	- - - - -	128
II. Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical doubled and transposed	- - - - -	131
III. Geminants	- - - - -	132
IV. Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals,		134
5. Defective and Anomalous Verbs	- - - - -	135

SECT. V. Connection of Pronouns with Verbs - - - - - 142

CHAP. V. On the Adverbs	- - - - -	148
CHAP. VI. On the Prepositions	- - - - -	153
CHAP. VII. On the Conjunctions	- - - - -	158
CHAP. VIII. On the Interjections	- - - - -	159

CONTENTS.

PART III. SYNTAX.

CHAP. I.	Nature of Sentences	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	161
CHAP. II.	Subject and Attribute	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	162
CHAP. III.	Uses and Construction of the Noun :								
	A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	164
	B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	165
	C. Number of Nouns	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	165
	D. Cases of Declension	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	166
CHAP. IV.	Degrees of Comparison	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	170
CHAP. V.	On the Numerals	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	171
CHAP. VI.	Syntax of the Separable Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	172
CHAP. VII.	On the Affixed Pronouns	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	173
CHAP. VIII.	Construction of the Verb :								
	SECT. I. On the Tenses	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	174
	SECT. II. On the Moods	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	176
	SECT. III. Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the								
	Sentence	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	177
CHAP. IX.	Construction of the remaining Parts of Speech	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	178

PART IV.

1. Conversational Modes of Salutation	-	-	-	-	-	-	179
2. Exercises	-	-	-	-	-	-	183

AMHARIC GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

ON THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE IN GENERAL.

I. **THE Amharic Language** (አምሃር፡ ቋንቋ ::), a grammatical delineation of which the following pages propose to give, is that Abyssinian Dialect, which is spoken by the greater part of the population of Abyssinia: it prevails in all the provinces of Abyssinia lying between the Taccazê and the Abay or Abyssinian Nile, and in the kingdom of Shoa; and enters besides, extensively, into the languages of Argobba and Harrar. Its next cognate dialect is the *Tigrê Language* (ትግር፡ ቋንቋ ::); which is spoken by the inhabitants of Tigrê or the N. E. part of Abyssinia, and has its modifications in the Dumhoeto Dialect at Massowa, and the coast N. of that island, and in the language of Gurāguê. Both the Amharic and the Tigrê Languages are modifications of the Ancient *Ethiopic* or *Gěez* (ልዩኒ: ግዕዝ:), to which they bear nearly the same relation as some of our Modern European Languages to the Latin; viz. that of origin and derivation. § However, the present language of Tigrê has preserved a greater similarity to the Ethiopic, and received much less mixture from other languages than the Amharic; the Amhāra people being of a more changeable character, and having had intercourse with a greater variety of foreign nations than their Tigrê brethren.

II. The denomination “Amharic,” which this language has received, is obviously attributable to the province called *Amhāra*, situate between Shoa, Godjam, Bagammeder, Lasta, and Angot. That province, which is now the seat of the Yedjows, Argobbans, and other Galla tribes—who partly speak the Argobba dialect, partly the Galla language—must have been considered the chief province of Abyssinia at the time the language obtained that name: for not only have all the countries in which the same language is spoken—excepting Shoa and Efāt, i.e. all the N. W.

countries of Abyssinia to the W. of the Taceazê—been called Amhāra, but the natives also frequently apply it to their religion; so that the appellation *Amharic* is used synonymously with *Christian*, although at present the greater part of the population of that province are Mohammedans. But in what the superiority of that province consisted, and the time when it was so pre-eminent, remains still a matter of inquiry: for the reasons which Ludolf assigns, that Amhāra was in the neighbourhood of Shoa, from which the Royal Family of Solomon, which spoke this language, was restored, after the downfall of the Zagæan line; and that Amba Geshen (better *Géshé*), where subsequently the Princes of that family were confined, was situate in Amhāra—seem rather unsatisfactory; nor have we at present to offer any thing better in lieu of them.

III. From the fact of the Amharic Language being a descendant of the Ethiopic—which will be evident, from a superficial knowledge of both—it claims the same *affinity to the Semitic family* as its parent; although it has adopted other forms and words from surrounding nations, which bear no relation to that family. A knowledge, therefore, of any of the Semitic Dialects, such as the Hebrew and the Arabic, facilitates, to a great extent, the study of the Amharic. We shall, in the course of this work, have frequent occasions to refer to the Arabic and the Hebrew; although it will be our endeavour also to suit the capacity of those who may have had no opportunity of learning any but European languages.

IV. According to the nature of a Grammar, this work will be arranged under the following heads: 1. *Phonology*; 2. *Etymology*; 3. *Syntax*:—treating, in the First Part, on the Sounds and Letters; in the Second, on the different Parts of Speech; and in the Third, on the Grammatical Construction of Words into Sentences. There is, as yet, no occasion to speak on Amharic Prosody; but instead of this, we shall annex a variety of Amharic expressions, and a few Exercises.

THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

	ORDER of the VOWELS . .	I. ሀ፡	II. ሁ፡	III. ሐ፡	IV. ሔ፡	V. ሀ፡	VI. ሄ፡	VII. ሄ፡
	POWER of the VOWELS . .	Short ä, or ä, as in cat	oo, or ü, as in full, put	î as in pin, finger	Long ä as in father	Bohemian è, or îè, as German jeder	Vowelless or short ä, as in since, summer	o usually sharp, as in so, or like wo
NUMERICAL ORDER of the LETTERS	ETHIOPIAN NAMES of VOWELS	ጐ፡፡ Gëzë (original)	ካ፡፡ Kāzë (altered, second)	ሣ፡፡ Sālis (third)	ረ፡፡ Rābë' (fourth)	ጃ፡፡ Hāmīs (fifth)	ሳ፡፡ Sādis (sixth)	ሳ፡፡ Sābë' (seventh)
	NAMES of Letters	POWER of Letters						
1. ሀ፡	Hoī	፡ ሀ H	ሀ፡ hā	ሀ፡ hā, or hoo	ሀ፡ hā, or hee	ሀ፡ hā	ሀ፡ hē (Boh.)	ሀ፡ hē, or h
2. ሁ፡	Lāwī	L	ሁ፡ hā	ሁ፡ hū, ..loo	ሁ፡ hū, ..lee	ሁ፡ hā	ሁ፡ lē ..	ሁ፡ lē ..l
3. ሐ፡	Hāūt	፡ ሐ H	ሐ፡ hā	ሐ፡ hū ..hoo	ሐ፡ hū, ..hee	ሐ፡ hā	ሐ፡ hē ..	ሐ፡ hē ..h
4. ሔ፡	Māwī	M	ሐ፡ mē	ሐ፡ mū ..moo	ሐ፡ mī ..nee	ሐ፡ mē	ሐ፡ mē ..	ሐ፡ mē ..m
5. ሀ፡	Sāūt	፡ ሀ S	ሀ፡ sē	ሀ፡ sū ..soo	ሀ፡ sī ..see	ሀ፡ sē	ሀ፡ sē ..	ሀ፡ sē ..s
6. ሁ፡	Rē-ēs	R	ሁ፡ rē	ሁ፡ rū ..roo	ሁ፡ rī ..ree	ሁ፡ rē	ሁ፡ rē ..	ሁ፡ rē ..r
7. ሐ፡	Sūt	፡ ሐ S	ሐ፡ sē	ሐ፡ sū ..soo	ሐ፡ sī ..see	ሐ፡ sē	ሐ፡ sē ..	ሐ፡ sē ..s
8. ሔ፡	Shūt	፡ ሔ SH	ሔ፡ shē	ሔ፡ shū ..shoo	ሔ፡ shī ..shee	ሔ፡ shē	ሔ፡ shē ..	ሔ፡ shē ..sh
9. ሀ፡	K'āf	K, ፡ ሀ	ሀ፡ k'ā	ሀ፡ k'ū ..k'oo	ሀ፡ k'ī ..k'ee	ሀ፡ k'ā	ሀ፡ k'ē ..	ሀ፡ k'ē ..k'
10. ጐ፡፡	Bēt	B	፡ ሀ	፡ ሀ ..boo	፡ ሀ ..bee	፡ ሀ	፡ ሀ ..	፡ ሀ ..b
11. ጐ፡፡	Tāwī	፡ ጐ T	፡ ጐ	፡ ጐ ..too	፡ ጐ ..tee	፡ ጐ	፡ ጐ ..	፡ ጐ ..t
12. ጐ፡፡	Tshāwī	Tsh or tīē	፡ ጐ	፡ ጐ ..tshoo	፡ ጐ ..tshee	፡ ጐ	፡ ጐ ..	፡ ጐ ..tsh
13. ጐ፡፡	Harm	፡ ሐ H	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..hoo	፡ ሐ ..hee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..h
14. ጐ፡፡	Nāhās	N	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..noo	፡ ሐ ..nee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..n
15. ጐ፡፡	Gnāhās	French GN	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..gnoo	፡ ሐ ..gnee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..gn
16. ጐ፡፡	Alf	፡ ሐ or (') Spiritus Lenis	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..oo	፡ ሐ ..ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..o
17. ጐ፡፡	Kāf	፡ ሐ K	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..koo	፡ ሐ ..kee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..k
18. ጐ፡፡	Chāf	German CH	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..choo	፡ ሐ ..chee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..ch
19. ጐ፡፡	Wāwī	፡ ሐ W	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..woo	፡ ሐ ..wee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..w, ü
20. ጐ፡፡	Āin	፡ ሐ or (') Amb, Spiritus Lenis	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..oo	፡ ሐ ..ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..o
21. ጐ፡፡	Zāwī	፡ ሐ Z	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..zoo	፡ ሐ ..zee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..z
22. ጐ፡፡	Zshāwī	French Z	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..joo	፡ ሐ ..jee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..j
23. ጐ፡፡	Yāmān	German J	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..yoo	፡ ሐ ..yee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..y
24. ጐ፡፡	Dent	D	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..doo	፡ ሐ ..dee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..d
25. ጐ፡፡	Jent	J	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..joo	፡ ሐ ..jee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..j
26. ጐ፡፡	Geml	G (palatine)	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..goo	፡ ሐ ..gee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..g
27. ጐ፡፡	Tāūt	፡ ሐ or (') Spiritus Lenis	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..t'oo	፡ ሐ ..t'ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..t'
28. ጐ፡፡	Tshāūt	፡ ሐ or (') Spiritus Lenis	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..tsh'oo	፡ ሐ ..tsh'ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..tsh'
29. ጐ፡፡	Pāūt	P, sudden explosion of breath from between the lips	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..p'oo	፡ ሐ ..p'ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..p'
30. ጐ፡፡	Tsāādāwī	Ts, resembling 'r' and 'd'	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..ts'oo	፡ ሐ ..ts'ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..ts'
31. ጐ፡፡	Tsappn	Ts	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..ts'oo	፡ ሐ ..ts'ee	፡ ሐ	፡ ሐ ..	፡ ሐ ..ts'

PART I.—PHONOLOGY.

ON THE

SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE.

~~~~~  
CHAP. I.

ON THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

THE Amharic Language is written with the same letters as the Ethiopic; each letter varying in seven different forms, in order to express different sounds; Vowels and Consonants not being separated. But besides the Twenty-six Ethiopic, the Amharic Language has seven peculiar Orders of Letters, which serve to express sounds not existing in the former: they are the following:

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| ሸ: | ሹ: | ሺ: | ሻ: | ሼ: | ሽ: | ሾ: |
| ቸ: | ቹ: | ቺ: | ቻ: | ቼ: | ች: | ቾ: |
| ጸ: | ጹ: | ጺ: | ጻ: | ጼ: | ጽ: | ጾ: |
| ኸ: | ኹ: | ኺ: | ኻ: | ኼ: | ኽ: | ኾ: |
| ዸ: | ዹ: | ዺ: | ዻ: | ዼ: | ዽ: | ዾ: |
| ፸: | ፹: | ፺: | ፻: | ፼: | ፽: | ፾: |

These, added to the 26 Ethiopic orders, give to the Amharic Alphabet the number of 33 orders of letters; that is, each order consisting of 7 forms or characters, 231 different characters. Add to these the 4 times 5, *i.e.* 20 Diphthongs, you have 251; which, to commit to memory, call for the close application of the student. The Alphabetical Table opposite embodies them all; giving a correct exhibition of the numerical arrangement of the letters, with their names and value; and the phonical order, power, and Ethiopical designation of the seven different orders, with the pronunciation affixed in English to each character.

The Abyssinian Ciphers are as follow:

፩: 1.    ፪: 2.    ፫: 3.    ፬: 4.    ፭: 5.    ፮: 6.    ፯: 7.    ፰: 8.    ፱: 9.    ፲: 10.  
 ፳: 11. ፷: 12. ፹: 13. ፻: 14. ፺: 15. ፻: 16. ፻: 17. ፻: 18. ፻: 19. ፻: 20.  
 ፻: 30. ፻: 40. ፻: 50. ፻: 60. ፻: 70. ፻: 80. ፻: 90. ፻: 100.  
 ፻፻: 200. ፻፻: 1000. ፻፻: 2000. ፻፻: or ፻፻: 10000. ፻፻: 100000.



NOTE.—A greater number of Diphthongs might have been added; as the Abyssinians, not being accustomed to write the language they speak, like to contract several sounds together, and to express them by single characters. Ludolf has given, in his Amharic Grammar, several specimens, showing how they apply this to foreign languages. We observe, here, that we have seen several instances of the same mode of proceeding in their own language: especially do they like to combine the fourth with the sixth form; *e.g.* ፳: twā, for ፳፱:: ፪: fwā, for ፪፱:: ፱፱: mwā, for ፱፱፱: &c. But as those figures have not been generally adopted, and the number of characters is already large enough, and suited to express almost any sound, we have abstained from mentioning them in the Alphabet; noticing them here only, in order to put those on their guard who may happen, in their intercourse with Abyssinians, to meet such uncouth figures, that they may not be frightened.

## CHAP. II.

### NUMERICAL ORDER, AND NAMES OF THE LETTERS.

1. For the general Order, in which these letters follow each other, no reason can be assigned; as it has no analogy in other languages, nor any foundation in the natural developement of sound from the organs of speech, but seems to have been arbitrarily put together. Exceptions are, the succession of ሰ: and ሰ፱:: ፳: and ፳፱:: ፪: and ፪፱:: ፱: and ፱፱:: ፱፱፱: and ፱፱፱፱:: ፪፱: and ፪፱፱:: ፱፱፱፱: and ፱፱፱፱፱:: and ፳፱: (for the resemblance of figure) ፳፱፱: and ፱፱፱፱፱::

2. The Names of the letters have been delivered to us from remote antiquity; and as most of them, if not all, are significant, we think it but proper to preserve them. They must have been formerly in general use among the Abyssinians, else it is not conceivable how they should have been transmitted to Europeans: but the natives of the present day know nothing about them, except from the schools of the Missionaries.\*

3. The signification of most of the names of the letters is clear: they refer to the sound they express, adding the adjective termination *āwi*, contracted into *āi*, or mis-spelled *oi*, for the masculine, and *āwit*, *āūt*, *āit*, or *āt*, for the

---

\* This, however, is no reason to omit them; because the Abyssinians do not at all dislike to have names put to their hitherto unnamed letters; many of which are the same as those which they know, from the Psalms, to belong to the sacred language of the Old Testament. Many of the most learned Abyssinians have applied to the Missionaries for the express purpose of learning the names of their own letters; and thought to have gained an invaluable treasure, when they had learned them.



feminine gender. A short analysis of these names, as far as it can be given, will establish this statement.

1. **ሀ** : Hoï, **ሀፂ** : for **ሃፂ** : or **ሃፂ** : the *h* letter.
2. **ለ** : Lāwī, **ለፂ** : the *l* letter.
3. **ሐ** : Hāūt, **ሐውት** : (f.) for **ሐፂት** : the *h* letter.
4. **መ** : Māi, **ማፂ** : for **ማፂ** : the *m* letter.
5. **ሠ** : Sāūt, **ሠውት** : for **ሠፂት** : (fem.) the *s* letter.
7. **ሰ** : Sāt, **ሰት** : for **ሰፂት** : the *s* letter.
8. **ሸ** : Shāt, **ሸት** : for **ሸፂት** ::
11. **ተ** : Tāwī, **ተፂ** ::
12. **ቸ** : Tshāwī, **ቸፂ** ::
19. **ወ** : Wāwī, **ወፂ** ::
21. **ዘ** : Zāi, **ዘፂ** : for **ዘፂ** ::
22. **ዝ** : Zāi (French *j*), **ዝፂ** : for **ዝፂ** ::
27. **ጠ** : Tāit, **ጠፂት** : for **ጠፂት** ::
28. **ጪ** : Tsh'āit, **ጪፂት** : for **ጪፂት** ::
29. **ጰ** : P'āit, **ጰፂት** : for **ጰፂት** ::

The following names are derived from the cognate Semitic Dialects, probably from the Hebrew, since they have the names of the Hebrew letters in the Psalms:

|     |            |        |              |      |   |        |
|-----|------------|--------|--------------|------|---|--------|
| 6.  | <b>ረ</b> : | Rě-ěs, | <b>ረዕሰ</b> : | Heb. | ך | Rěsh.  |
| 9.  | <b>ቀ</b> : | Kāf,   | <b>ቀፍ</b> :  | ..   | ק | Kof.   |
| 10. | <b>በ</b> : | Bêt,   | <b>በት</b> :  | ..   | ב | Bêt.   |
| 16. | <b>አ</b> : | Alf,   | <b>አልፍ</b> : | ..   | א | Alef.  |
| 17. | <b>ከ</b> : | Kāf,   | <b>ከፍ</b> :  | ..   | כ | Kāf.   |
| 20. | <b>ዐ</b> : | Āin,   | <b>ዐይን</b> : | ..   | ע | Āin.   |
| 2፫. | <b>ג</b> : | Geml,  | <b>גמל</b> : | ..   | ג | Gîmel. |

With regard to their significations, the student is referred to the Hebrew Lexicon.

Concerning the rest, the signification of which is not so clear, we leave them for the amusement of such as will take the trouble of searching in the *Ethiopic and the cognate dialects*.





## CHAP. III.

ON THE VIRTUE, ORGANICAL CLASSIFICATION, AND PRONUNCIATION  
OF THE LETTERS, CONSIDERING THEM AS SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

1. As to the VIRTUE of the letters, we must state, first of all, that Consonants and Vowels are combined in the same characters; and on this account, each letter is able to present a syllable by itself. But laying aside, for the present, the Vowel question, we proceed at once to CLASSIFY the letters according to the organs chiefly concerned in their pronunciation.

2. According to the *organs*, the letters are divided—

A. In *Gutturals*: **U**: **ሐ**: **ኀ**: **ኸ**: **አ**: **ዐ**::

B. In *Palatals*: **ቀ**: **ከ**: **ፆ**: **ገ**::

C. In *Linguals* and *Dentals*: **ለ**: **ሠ**: **ረ**: **ሰ**: **ሸ**: **ተ**: **ቸ**: **ኀ**: **ዘ**:  
**ዛ**: **ጸ**: **ፂ**: **ጠ**: **ጨ**: **ጸ**: **ፀ**::

D. In *Labials*: **መ**: **በ**: **ወ**: **ጸ**: **ፈ**: **ፕ**::

E. *Nasal*: **ኑ**::

3. In speaking on the PRONUNCIATION of these letters, we must refer to the Ancient Ethiopic, the various dialects of Abyssinia, especially the Tigrê, and the cognate Semitic Languages.

A. The *Gutturals*.—In the present Amharic, **U**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**: are pronounced alike, like *h* in *horse*, and are often exchanged for **አ**:, thus entirely dropping the aspiration. The Tigrê language shows us, however, that each of these letters must have formerly expressed a distinct and different sound; for in it, **U**: sounds like our *h* in *horse*, and answers the Arabic *ḥ*, and the Hebrew ח. **ሐ**: is pronounced with a pressure in the lower part of the throat, like the Arabic *ḥ*; **ኀ**: like the Swiss *ch*, the Arabic *ḥ*, and the Hebrew ח; and **ኸ**: like the Scotch and German *ch*, in *loch*, *nicht*, and answering the Hebrew ח without the Dagesh. This pronunciation of the **ኸ**: is equally in use in the Amharic language.

**አ**: and **ዐ**: are both pronounced alike, as the Greek Spiritus lenis ('); but in the Tigrê they are different among each other, **አ**: being like Spiritus lenis, *h*, or *h*, and **ዐ**: like the Arabic *ʿ* and Hebrew *ʿ*, with the same pressure in the throat as the *ḥ*, but without the aspiration.

B. The *Palatals*:

**ቀ**: corresponds with *q* in the Hebrew, and with *q* in the Arabic Language. On account of its peculiar pronunciation, we may call it an *explosive* letter, such as **ጠ**: **ጨ**: and **ጸ**: in the third, and **ጸ**: in the



fourth class: it is a sudden explosion of breath from the palate, after the latter has been spasmodically contracted. We have endeavoured to represent this pronunciation, after the example of Ludolf, by writing K', but it must be heard before it can be conceived. This pronunciation, however, is not uniform, although general. In Tigrê, it is besides often pronounced like the Arabie ك, often like ق; in Shoa generally, like a mere Spiritus lenis ('), similar to the ق as pronounced by common people in Egypt. Thus the word ተቀበል: is pronounced in three or four different ways: in good language, Tāk'ab'bälä; in Tigrê, Tāghāb'bälä (تَغَبَّل) and Tākāb'bälä (تَقَبَّل); and in Shoa, Tā-āb'bälä.

**h**: sounds like our *k*, or *c* before consonants.

**p**: is pronounced like *y* as consonant, or like the German *j* &c.

**g**: is pronounced like our *g* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants.

### C. The *Linguals* and *Dentals*:

**l**: like our *l*.

**w**: and **ñ**: may originally (perhaps answering ص and س, ڤ and ږ) have sounded differently from each other: at present, they are pronounced alike, sounding like our *s*.

**r**: sounds like our *r*.

**ñ**: formed in the Amharie by the accession of the *ī* sound to the **ñ**: and **w**:, is the same as ش, ږ, and *sh*.

**t**: is pronounced like ت, ڤ, and *t*.

**ʈ**: formed by combining a soft sibilation with **t**, sounds like *tsh*, or rather like *t* with a German *j*.

**n**: is the same as our *n*.

**h**: is like *z*.

**ʃ**: like the French *j*.

**ʒ**: is the same with our *d*.

**ʒ**: sounds like the English *j*, or rather like the German *dj*: it is often used to express the Arabic ڨ.

**m**: **ɱ**: and **x**: are the same sort of letters in this class as the **ʈ**: in the Second, which we call Explosive; because they, as it were, explode from between the fore-part of the tongue and the roof of the mouth or the root of the teeth. We have in the Alphabet represented them by writing *t'*, *tsh'*, and *ts'*. But as some more or less hissing seems to accompany this explosion, **m**: and **x**: frequently interchange.

**ʈ**: is pronounced like *ts*, or the German *z*.



D. The *Labials*:

**ᄡ**: is the same as our *m*.

**ᄢ**: the same as our *b*. In Tigrê, it generally sounds like *v*, ᄢ, or the Modern Greek β: and this pronunciation must have been formerly more general; for otherwise it seems unaccountable, how it could have been turned into a mere vowel *o*, as in ᄡᄢᄣ:; whereas the soft *b*, our *v*, being a mere condensation of that Vowel, was more liable to that change.

**ᄤ**: is the same as *w*.

**ᄥ**: the explosive letter of this class: the breath puffs off from between the lips, before the vowel is heard.

**ᄦ**: is the same as ᄢ, ف, and *f*.

**ᄧ**: our *p*, merely used for foreign words.

E. The *Nasal* ᄨ: is pronounced similar to the French and Italian *gn*, or rather like the Spanish ñ.

4. The letters are to be further divided, as in other Semitic Dialects, into *Radicals* and *Serviles*. Servile letters are those which are employed in the process of grammatical formation, derivation, and flexion: the radicals are never so employed. The serviles are often radical, though Radicals are never servile. The Servile Letters are,

**ᄡ: ᄢ: ᄣ: ᄤ: ᄥ: ᄦ: ᄧ: ᄨ: ᄩ:**

---

 CHAP. IV.

## ON THE SEVEN VOCAL ORDERS OF THE ABYSSINIAN LETTERS.

1. As the Abyssinian Languages differ from the other Semitic Dialects (except the Coptic), in being written from the left to the right; so they are likewise different from them, as well as from most other languages, in the manner in which the Voices or Vowels are expressed.

2. This is done in the Abyssinian Languages, not, as in the other Semitic Dialects, by any smaller points or figures written above or below the line; nor, as in other languages, by a distinct sort of characters of equal value with the Vowelless Consonants; but by a system of changes which the original letter itself undergoes; each letter *expressing Consonant and Vowel in the same figure*, and *assuming seven different forms*, according to the Vowels which are attached to it; which forms (after Ludolf) we call *Orders of Letters*.



NOTE.—The terms “Consonant” and “Vowel” are not quite suitable to the Abyssinian Alphabet; as the Vowels themselves are but con-sonant, being inexpressible by themselves; and the Consonants being, as appears from the Sixth Order, in form more independent than the Vowels: but to be understood, we must use the expression.

3. The Seven different *Voices* or *Vowels* expressed by these Seven Orders are these:

A. Short  $\text{ä}$ , as in *fat, lad, &c.*; answering the Fat-ha ( $\text{◌}$ ) in the Arabic, and the Patach ( $\text{◌}$ ) in the Hebrew. Like the former, it is modifiable, approaching the  $\text{ě}$  sound, or the short Hebrew Segol ( $\text{◌}$ ).

B.  $\text{û}$ , as in *full, put, lucid*; or  $\text{ô}$ , as in *move*; or *oo*, as in *fool, &c.*

C.  $\text{î}$ , as in *pin, finger, hinder*; or *ee*, as in *bee, see*; or *ea*, as in *read, sea*; or *e*, as in *scene*.

D.  $\text{ā}$ , as in *far, father, rather*.

E.  $\text{ë}$  or  $\text{ê}$ ; a sharp  $\text{ê}$ , with a slight  $\text{ï}$  sound before it, as in the Slavonian Dialects; as the German *je*, “ever,” or the English *yea*.

F.  $\text{ě}$  or  $\text{ŷ}$ , as in *liv-er, ber-ry*. This order also is often mute or vowel-less, as in the English and French Languages the mute  $\text{ě}$ . In fact, it completely resembles the Shwa simplex ( $\text{◌}$ ) of the Hebrew Language.

G.  $\text{ó}$ , generally sharp, as in *so*; or with *w* before it, as in *woe, wonder*.

4. In order to express these seven sounds by each letter, the Abyssinians have adopted the following plan:

A. The *Original Form* is used for the expression of the *First Vowel* ( $\text{ä}$ ). It therefore is called, with its Ethiopic name,  $\text{ግዕዝ}$ : Gě-ěz, which signifies “original”; and is therefore applied to the Ethiopic Language in general ( $\text{ግዕዝ}$ :  $\text{ግዕዝ}$ ), in order to distinguish it from any translation. In reference to the letter forms, it means the original, simple, unaltered form,  $\text{ሀ}$ :  $\text{ለ}$ :  $\text{ሐ}$ : &c.

B. The *Second Vowel* ( $\text{û}$ ), which is called  $\text{ካዕብ}$ : Kā-ěb, *i.e.* “altered,” “second,” is expressed by the affixion of a point ( $\text{◌}$ ) to the right-hand side of the letter, generally in the middle ( $\text{ሁ}$ :  $\text{ሁ}$ :  $\text{ሁ}$ :  $\text{ሁ}$ ); in four instances at the bottom ( $\text{ረ}$ :  $\text{ወ}$ :  $\text{ደ}$ :  $\text{ደ}$ ); and in one instance, under the letter ( $\text{ረ}$ ).

C. The *Third Vowel* ( $\text{î}$ ), which is called  $\text{ሣለብ}$ : Sālēs, *i.e.* “third,” is generally represented by a similar point annexed to the foot of the letter on the right side, and below the line, ( $\text{ላ}$ :  $\text{ባ}$ :  $\text{ላ}$ :  $\text{ባ}$ :  $\text{ደ}$ ). Where the original has no foot (*i.e.* line going downwards), a foot is formed; and in



order thereby not to enlarge the general size of the letter, the rest is diminished where it has been thought necessary (**У: 0У: 4У: Ф: 0:**). Where the original has a point below, that is turned upwards (**З: 4:**). An exception is, **Р::**

D. The *Fourth Vowel* ( $\bar{a}$ ), called **А: П0:** Rābē' "the fourth," effects seven different changes:

- (a) A foot line is made as in the preceding order, but without point: **У: 0У: 4У: Ф: 0: 0: 4::**
- (b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **А: 4: 0: 0: 0: 4:**  
**4: 4: 4: 4: 0: 0: 4: 4::**
- (c) A short horizontal line with point, is added, to the left at the bottom: **Ф: 4: 4: 4: 4: 4: 4::**
- (d) The same added to the right at the head: **4:** doubled **4::**
- (e) Foot line broken: **А::**
- (f) Foot point to the left shortened: **4: 4:**

E. The change effected by the *Fifth Vowel* ( $\hat{e}$ ), called **Э000:** Hāmēs "fifth," is simple: it consists in adding a small circular line or eye to the right side at the bottom, or in the middle: in instances where the letter has received a foot line in the two preceding forms, at the bottom of that line; e.g. **У: А: 0У: Р: 00:** &c.

F. The greatest diversity is presented by the *Sixth Order* ( $\check{e}$  or  $\check{y}$ ) **040:** i.e. "sixth." Instead of analyzing it, we recommend the scholar to examine that column himself in the Alphabet.

G. The *Seventh Vowel* (o) **0-П0:** Sābē', i.e. "seventh," effects the following changes:

- (a) A small circular line is formed at the top: **У: А: 0: Ф: 4:**  
**4: 4: 4: 4: 4::**
- (b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **4: 0: 0: 0: 4:**  
**4: 4: 4: 4: 4: 4: 0: 0: 4: 4::**
- (c) Foot lines on the left side or in the middle are formed: **00:**  
**0: 0: 0: 0::**
- (d) Other forms are, **Р: 0: 4::**

5. As for the *quantity* of the vowels, it must be said, that those of the First and Sixth Order are constantly *short*; those of the Fourth and Fifth constantly *long*; and the rest are sometimes long, sometimes short.

NOTE. — Concerning the Diphthongs, as their pronunciation presents no difficulty, nothing remains to be said except what has been mentioned in Chap. I.



## CHAP. V.

## ON SYLLABIFICATION.

1. In the Abyssinian Languages, each letter, being Consonant and Vowel in the same figure, is able to constitute a *Syllable*; e.g. **ገገገ**: nǎ-gǎ-rǎ; **ፍፍፍ**: nǎ-fā-k'ê. Such syllables, formed by single letters, we may call *simple* or *open syllables*.

2. But although this is the case, they *can* combine two or three letters (not more) together, to form one syllable; which will be called, if consisting of two letters, a *closed*; if of three, a *compound* syllable. Thus, e.g. **ቃል**: k'āl, "word," is closed; **ሕዝብ**: hēzb, "people," is compound.

3. This is performed with the assistance of the Sixth Order; the vowel of which being short, and rather a semi-vowel, or the same thing as the Hebrew Shwā (ְ), is liable to become *mute*. Whenever this occurs, its letter must be added either to the preceding or to the following letter, in order to be pronouncible; e.g. **ገር**: gǎ-r, "meek." **በልሃት**: bēl-hā-t, "dexterity."

4. The question then is, *When is the letter of the Sixth Order mute or vowelless?* A few general rules, which will answer it, shall be laid down here.

A. Letters of the Sixth Order are MUTE *at the end of words* generally; e.g. **ሀር**: hǎr, "silk"; **ቃል**: k'āl, "word"; **ገገር**: nǎgǎr, "word," "thing"; **ፀሐይ**: tsa-hāy, "sun"; **ዓለም**: ā-lam, "world."

NOTE.—Seeming deviations, but no real ones, are those Ethiopic words which in the Amharic have been abbreviated: in such instances, the final letter of this form is not vowelless, reminding of the guttural letter, which is no longer written, but still pronounced:

**ሰም**: sā-mě, "wax." Eth. **ሰምዕ**::

**ብር**: bē-rě, "pencil." Eth. **ብርዕ**::

**ኦንጅ**: en-djǎ, "but." Eth. **ኦንጅዒ**::

A real exception is this, which occurs in Feminine terminations of Pronouns or Verbs, in the Second Person Singular of the Feminine Gender, which are sometimes written in the third, sometimes in the sixth form, and may be pronounced or not; e.g. **አንት**: better **አንቲ**: an-tshǎ, "thou (female)!" **ቀጅ**: or **ቀጂ**: k'ǎ-dj, or k'ǎ-djǎ, "draw (thou female)!"

B. The same letters *remain* MUTE, when the words to which they belong, receive such additions at the end, by which their form is not changed: e.g. **ቸር**: tshǎr, "kind." **ቸርነት**: tshǎr-năt, "kindness." **ባል**: bā-l, "husband," "owner." **ባልተት**: bāl-têt, "widow."

NOTE.—An exception is **ቃልቸ**: k'ā-lě-tshā, "sorcerer," "soothsayer."



C. When two letters of this order meet together at the end of a vowel, both are mute, unless want of organic affinity, or gemination, prevents their being so; but when such a word is augmented at the end, the last letter of this order is sounded:

- |                                               |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| (a) <b>ደርቅ</b> : dǎ-rk', "dry."               | <b>ለምጽ</b> : lǎ-mts', "leprosy."         |
| <b>መርዝ</b> : mǎ-rz, "poison."                 | <b>ቀንድ</b> : k'ǎ-nd, "horn."             |
| <b>ዓይን</b> : ā-ŷn, "eye."                     |                                          |
| (b) <b>ልግም</b> : lě-gěm, "superficiality."    | <b>ግብዝ</b> : gě-běz, "hypocrite."        |
| <b>አቅም</b> : ǎ-k'ěm, "measure."               | <b>አጭር</b> : ǎ-tsh'yr, "short."          |
| (c) <b>ስምም</b> : sě-měm, "harmony."           | <b>ኧልል</b> : ě-lěl, "huzzah!"            |
| <b>ክትት</b> : kě-tět, "perfection," "fulness." |                                          |
| (d) <b>ቅድስት</b> : k'ěd-sě-nā, "holiness."     | <b>ዝምድና</b> : zěm-dě-nā, "relationship." |

D. When a letter of the sixth form commences a word, its vowel is generally sounded:

- |                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>ልደት</b> : lě-dăt, "birth."     | <b>ክፉ</b> : kě-fǔ, "bad." |
| <b>ስጠኝ</b> : sě-t'ǎng, "give me." | <b>ክረምት</b> : kě-rǎmt.    |

E. In trilateral words, where all the three letters are of the sixth order, the first is generally sounded; the two following art not:

- |                                 |                                          |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>ሕዝብ</b> : hě-zb, "people."   | <b>ጽድቅ</b> : ts'ě-dk', "righteousness."  |
| <b>ድንቅ</b> : dě-nk', "wonder."  | <b>ኧርም</b> : ě-rm, "a thing prohibited." |
| <b>ርስት</b> : rě-st, "heritage." | <b>ምሽት</b> : mě-sht, "wife."             |

F. In trilateral words, where the two first letters are of the sixth order, the first is sounded; the second is not:

- |                                        |                                        |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>ግርማ</b> : gě-r-mā, "majesty."       | <b>ኧንጂ</b> : ě-n-djā, "I do not know." |
| <b>ግምጃ</b> : gě-m-dja, "muslin cloth." |                                        |

But in many cases the second letter also is sounded:

- |                                         |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>ግሥላ</b> : gě-sě-lā, "brown leopard." | <b>ቅምቫ</b> : k'ě-mě-shā, "a bit." |
| <b>አጅጌ</b> : ě-djě-gê, "sleeve."        |                                   |

G. In quadrilateral words, beginning with two letters of the sixth order, and terminating in — **ት**: feminine, the first letter is sounded; the second is mute:

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>ፍልጠት</b> : fě-l-t'ăt, "megrims." | <b>ፍርሃት</b> : fě-r-hăt, "fear."  |
| <b>ንፍገት</b> : ně-f-găt, "avarice."  | <b>ንብረት</b> : ně-b-rat, "state." |



H. In quadriliteral feminine adjectives, whose letters are all of this order, the first and second letters are sounded, whilst the rest are mute:

**ንጽሕት**: ně-ts'ě-ht, "pure."

**ቅድስት**: k'ě-dě-st, "holy."

**ርክስት**: rě-kě-st, "impure."

**ጽድቅት**: ts'ě-dě-k't, "righteous."

I. In quadriliteral words, whose three first letters are of the sixth order, the first and second are generally sounded, whilst the third is mute, unless obviated by Lit. C.:

**ኧለልተ**: ě-lě-l-tā, "the shouting." **ንጽሕፍ**: ně-ts'ě-h-nā, "purity."

J. In pluriliterals, beginning with three letters of this order, these are generally formed into one syllable; either the first and third, or the second and third letters being mute:

**ክርስቶስ**: Krě-s-tos, "Christ." **ፍሬምቢያ**: frě-m-biā, "breast-bone."

NOTE.—These rules will meet most cases: we refrain from adding more at this place, as it would swell this chapter to too large an extent; while in the further course of the Grammar, especially in those parts which treat on the Pronouns and the Verbs, the rest will be easily deduced.

## CHAP. VI.

### ON ACCENTUATION, AND POINTS OF DISTINCTION.

1. The Abyssinians have no marks for their accents. Some general Rules for Accentuation are as follow:—

A. In words consisting of long and short syllables (long and short either by the number of letters or by the quantity of vowels), the long syllable generally has the accent:

**ጥሬ**: tērê, "raw," "genuine." **ግራ**: gērā, "left." **በጥ**: bāgò, "good."

**ንጽ**: nětsû, "pure." **ባዶ**: bādo, "empty." **ዛሬ**: zārê, "to-day."

In these two latter instances, the first syllable has the accent, because the long ā of the fourth order is the longest vowel:

**ገደም**: gādām, "convent."

**ንፋቅ**: nēfāk'ê, "heresy."

**ፈቃድ**: fāk'ād, "will."

**ቅድስ**: k'ēdûs, "holy."

**መኖር**: mănòr, "the dwelling."

**ሆደም**: hodām, "voracious."

**መልካም**: māl-kām, "good," "beautiful." **ዝምድና**: zēm'dēnā, "affinity."

B. In Verbs, the radix without affirmatives, as well as with light affirmatives (*affirmativa levia*), has the accent on the antepenultima (on the third syllable from the end):



ሃበረ: năbără, "he was."

ተቀመጠ: tāk'ă'măt'a, "he sat down."

ሃለጽሁ: gǎ'lats'hû, "I have revealed."

See, however, more under the Verbs.

C. Feminine Adjectives and Substantives of the form ንግሥት: have the accent on the last syllable; e.g. ርኅምት: rĕgĕm't, "cursed."

D. Other Dissyllabic words with short vowels require the accent on penultima:

ልደት: lĕdăt, "birth."

ወምበር: wă'mbăr, "a seat," "chair."

ሃንዘብ: gǎ'nzāb, "property."

ድንግል: dĕngĕl, "virgin."

E. The heavier Suffixes (*suffixa gravia*) and Afformatives require the accent directly to precede them:

ቀምበር: "the yoke."


ቀምበረ/ችን: k'ămbărātshĕn, "our yoke."

መለሰ: "he brought back."

መለሰ/ችሁ: mǎlāsātshĕhû, "you brought back."

2. The *Interpunctuation* of the Abyssinians is very simple. A simple colon (:) serves to divide words from words; and a double colon (::) to separate sentences from sentences.

NOTE (a)—The colon, which is to prevent words running together, and thereby creating confusion, was formerly a perpendicular line (|), as is evident from inscriptions found at Axum; but that line has been divided into two points, as it was otherwise liable to have been mistaken for the numeral 1 (10).

(b) The double colon (::) is, in Abyssinian manuscripts, generally reserved for the end of paragraphs; when five red points are inserted into it in the form of a cross, in this manner, 

#### EXERCISE FOR READING.

(From "the Church History," p. 223.)

|                  |                     |                    |                   |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Băhăwār' yāt     | zǎ'măn              | băbêtă Crēs tî yăn | ĕn dêhlh yālătsh  |
| በሐዋርያት:          | ዘመን:                | በቤተ: ክርስቲያን:       | እንዲሁ: ያለች:        |
| In the Apostles' | time,               | in the Church      | such              |
| ă'n dĕ năt       | nă'bărătshĕbāt,     | hûlătshăû          | ă'ndĕ sĕ gā       |
| እንደነት:           | ነበረች ባት:            | ሁላቸው:              | እንድ: ሥጋ: እንዲት:    |
| a union          | was in her,         | all of them        | one body one      |
| năfsem           | es ki ho'nû dĕ răs. | Crēs tîyā nātem    | hû'lû ba Cres tōs |
| ነፍሱም             | እነሱሆኑ: ድረረ::        | ክርስቲያናትም:          | ሁሉ: በክርስቲስ:       |
| soul and         | that they were      | the Christians and | all in Christ     |



|                             |                  |                     |                         |                              |             |
|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| kă'to                       | ältä lä' yũm.    | hũlä'tshăũ          | yă A'dăm'               | lědjo'tsh                    | ěndă        |
| ከተ:                         | ከልተለዩም::         | ሁላቸው:               | የአደም:                   | ልጆች:                         | እንደ:        |
| never                       | were separated.  | all of them         | of Adam                 | children                     | as          |
| nă'bărũ                     | bă sěgā,         | hũ lātsh ă ũm       | la rāsă'tshăũ           |                              |             |
| ነበሩ:                        | በሥጋ:             | ሁላቸውም:              | ለራሳቸው:                  |                              |             |
| they were                   | after the flesh, | all of them and     | (as left) to themselves |                              |             |
| yālă                        | Crěst os         | yăt'ă'fũ            | hăt'e-'ān               | ěn dă                        | nă'bărũ     |
| ያለ:                         | ክርስቶስ:           | የጠፈ:                | ፍጥኣን:                   | እንደ:                         | ነበሩ:        |
| without Christ              | lost             | sinner              | as they                 | were,                        | so also     |
| băhă'imānot                 | hũlä'tshăũ       | bānde               | Crě st'os               | dānũ.                        |             |
| በሃይማኖት:                     | ሁላቸው:            | ባንድ:                | ክርስቶስ:                  | ደኑ::                         |             |
| by faith                    | all of them      | through one Christ  | were they saved.        |                              |             |
| hũlātsh ăũm                 | bān dě           | mats' rāt           | tăts'ă'rũ.              | bān dě                       | dă' mēm     |
| ሁላቸውም:                      | ባንድ:             | መጽራት:               | ተጸሩ::                   | ባንድ:                         | ደምም:        |
| they all and                | by one           | calling             | were called.            | by one blood and             |             |
| ts'ădăk'ũ                   | bān dě           | măn'fă sēm          | năts'ũ                  | tăk'ă'dăsũm.                 | P'ět'ros em |
| ጸደቁ:                        | ባንድ:             | መንፈስም:              | ነጹ:                     | ተቀደሱም::                      | ጴጥሮስም:      |
| justified,                  | by one           | Spirit and          | purified                | sanctified and.              | Peter also  |
| lă mĩ yă mēm                | hũ lă            | ă lă:               | ě lān te                | yă mă'n gēs tēnă             |             |
| ለሚያምኑ:                      | ሁሉ:              | አለ::                | እላንተ:                   | የመንግሥት:                      |             |
| to believers                | all              | said:               | You                     | of the kingdom (royalty) and |             |
| yăkěhēnăt wă'găn            |                  | nătshěhũ,           | yătămă'răt'ătshēm       |                              |             |
| የክህነት:                      | ወገን:             | ናቸው:                | የተመረጠችም:                |                              |             |
| of the priesthood a people, |                  | are,                | which is elected and    |                              |             |
| yătăk'ă'dăsătshem           | tě ũ' lid,       | tě g'ălt'ũ          | zănd                    |                              |             |
| የተቀደሱት:                     | ትውልድ::           | ትገልጡ:               | ዘንድ:                    |                              |             |
| and sanctified              | a generation,    | you should manifest | that                    |                              |             |
| kătsh'ă'lāmă                | wădă             | mi yās dăněk'ăũ     | wădă                    | běrhanũ                      |             |
| ከጨለማ:                       | ወደ:              | ማያስደንቀው:            | ወደ:                     | ብርሃኑ::                       |             |
| from darkness               | unto             | marvellous          | unto                    | his light                    |             |
| yăts'ără'tshěhũ             |                  | sěră.               |                         |                              |             |
| የጸራችሁን:                     |                  | ስራ::                |                         |                              |             |
| of Him that hath called you |                  | the works.          |                         |                              |             |

## IN ENGLISH CONSTRUCTION.

"In the time of the Apostles, there was such an union in the Church, that they (the Christians) were all one body and one soul. Christians were never (in no wise) separated in Christ. As all of them were Adam's children, after the flesh, and as in themselves and without Christ they



were lost sinners, so also (now) by faith they were saved through one Christ. They were all called with one calling; justified by one blood; and purified and sanctified by one Spirit. Peter also said to all believers: Ye are a royal and priestly people, a chosen and a sanctified generation, that ye should shew forth the works of Him that hath called you out of darkness unto His marvellous light."

## CHAP. VII.

### VARIOUS CHANGES OF LETTERS.

In order the better to comprehend the various euphonical changes occurring in the constitution of words in the different parts of speech, it is necessary to point out the rules by which the changes in the letters are regulated.

#### 1. *Addition of Letters.*

Speaking, in the first instance, of the ADDITION of letters to words, we regard them as they are joined either at the beginning, or in the middle, or at the end,—prosthesis, epenthesis, and paragoge.

A. When a word commences with a liquid letter, esp. **ṽ**: or **ḥ**:, the **ṽ**: is often preposed; e.g. **ṽḥḥḥ**: for **ḥḥḥ**: Nārēā. The preformative, also, to the First Person Plural of Verbs, in the Present Tense Indicative and Subjunctive, has **ṽṽ**—: for the Ethiopic **ṽ**—:: **ṽṽṽṽḥḥḥ**: "we return"; not **ṽṽṽḥḥḥ**:. **ṽḥ.ḥ**: for **ḥ.ḥ**: "head." **ṽḥḥḥ.ḥ**: for **ḥḥḥ.ḥ**: "wet."

B. In the middle and at the end after long vowels, **ṽ**: is inserted or affixed; e.g. **ṽḥḥḥ**: for **ḥḥḥ**: "time." **ṽḥḥḥḥḥ**: "and the work"; for **ḥḥḥḥḥ**:.  
 NOTE.—This euphonical **ṽ**: must not be confounded with the suffixed pronoun **ṽ**:, which only by the context can be distinguished from it.

#### 2. *Contraction of Letters.*

CONTRACTION occurs most frequently to the vocal letters **ṽ**: (**ṽ**:) **ṽ**: and **ḥ**:, besides these to the gutturals **ṽ**: **ḥ**: and **ḥ**:. They answer the **א** **ה** **ו** letters of the Hebrew Language, in their becoming quiescent. This is especially the case—

A. In verbs and words derived from them, which, originating in the Ethiopic, on their transition into the Amharic have dropped the gutturals, as not compatible with the character of the latter language. In compensation



for this loss of the consonant, they have retained the vowel, and joined it to the preceding letter :

| Amharic. | Ethiopic. |                              |
|----------|-----------|------------------------------|
| ማረ:      | for ምሕረ:  | "to pity," "have mercy."     |
| ጻፈ:      | .. ጻሐፈ:   | "to write."                  |
| ተማረ:     | .. ተመሀረ:  | "to learn."                  |
| መላ:      | .. መልክ:   | "to be full," "to fill."     |
| ገባ:      | .. ገብክ:   | "to enter."                  |
| ሰራ:      | .. ሰርሐ:   | "to work."                   |
| ሠራ:      | .. ሠርዐ:   | "to order," "to constitute." |
| አፈራ:     | .. አፍረዖ:  | "to bring forth fruit."      |
| ጽፈት:     | .. ጽሕፈት:  | "writing."                   |

B. When a word beginning with **አ**: receives a preformative of the first, fourth, or sixth order, the **አ**—: consonant is dropped, and the vowel absorbed by the preceding letter. If **አ**—: stands in the first order, it changes the preceding short letter to one of the fourth order; if the fourth order precedes, no contraction takes place; if **አ**: is of the sixth order, it sometimes changes the preceding short into a long letter, sometimes it does not at all affect it:

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| አንገት: "the neck."   | ባንገት: "on the neck."     |
| ኤርያ: "a swine."     | ለርያ: "to a swine."       |
| አደረገው: "he did it." | ያደረገው: "he who did it."  |
| አገኘ: "he found."    | ታገኝለህ: "thou wilt find." |

C. The same change, without loss of consonant, takes place with suffixes commencing with **ā**:

ሰራችሁ: "your work," from ሰራ: and **ā** ችሁ::

But when such suffixes are joined to letters ending in **ū** or **o**, these letters are changed into diphthongs:

ሰጠኋት: from ሰጠሁ: and **ā**ት: "I gave her."

When joined to letters of the fifth form, the suffix **ā** assumes the **P**:, as similar to the fifth vowel; and rendering that in the fourth form, deprives the preceding letter of its vowel:

ምሳልያችን: from ምሳሌ: and **ā**ችን: "our likeness."  
በርያቸው: and በረያቸው: "their ox."

D. In those verbs which are called *geminant*, the two identical letters,



*i.e.* second and third radicals, are, in several moods and tenses, contracted into one letter, which letter then is sounded as a double letter:

**ቀለለ**: "it was light."

**ደቀላለ**: for **ደቀልላለ**: "it is light."

**ሰደደ**: "he sent."

**የሚሰድድ**: for **የሚሰድድድ**: "he that sends."

NOTE.—The same change takes place in all languages. Cf. in the English: *refer, referring; compel, compelled; man, manned; stir, stirring; stab, stabbed; &c.* In the Hebrew, letters so contracted receive a compensative Dagesh (cf. **הִכָּדְתִּי**, **וְלִי**); in the Arabic, a Teshdid (**غَنَّ**, **دَبَّ**, **حَسَّ**). In the Abyssinian Languages they have no mark for this gemination; but in pronouncing the contracted syllable, the voice dwells on it for the same length of time as it would on the non-contracted two syllables.

E. The same change takes place in the conjugations of Verbs ending in **ኝ**: in the Second Person Plural, and in a few other instances; *e.g.*

**ሆን**: "We became," for **ሆንን**:: **ምነው**: **ማነው**: &c.

### 3. Elision.

A complete Elision, *i.e.* ejection without compensation, takes place—

A. At the end of certain words, with letters of the sixth order, which are not, or scarcely, pronounced; *e.g.* **ሰም**: for **ሰምዕ**: "wax." **ብር**: for **ብርዕ**: "pencil." **እንደ**: "but," for the Eth. and Tig. **እንደዓ**::

B. With the **የ**: Relative Pronoun, and the **የ**: of the Genitive Case, when Prepositions are prefixed to or precede the word; *e.g.* **ባየኝት**: **በወንድምህ**: **ቤት**: "In the house of thy brother, which I have seen"; instead of **በየየኝት**: **በየወንድምህ**: **ቤት**:: **እንደ**: **ታዘዝህ**: instead of **እንደ**: **የታዘዝህ**: "As thou art commanded."

C. With the Preformatives **እ**: and **ት**: in Verbs and verbal derivations, beginning with **እ**: and **ት**:: *e.g.*

**አደርጋለሁ**: "I do"; **አሥራለሁ**: "I bind"; **አስጽፋለሁ**: "I order to write"; instead of **አደርጋለሁ**: **አሥራለሁ**: and **አስጽፋለሁ**:: **ትቀበላለህ**: "thou receivest"; **ትመታላችሁ**: "you will be beaten"; instead of **ትትቀበላለህ**: and **ትትመታላችሁ**::

D. The Preformative **ት**., with the negative **አ**., is often suppressed before **ት**: **ቸ**: **ጠ**: **ጨ**: **ደ**: **ጀ**: **ሰ**: **ሸ**: **ጸ**: and **ፀ**:: *e.g.*

**አጽፍ**: for **አትጽፍ**: "Do not write."

**አጠብቅ**: "Do not observe"; &c.

NOTE.—To this rule may be reckoned **ደ**: before **ስ**: in one instance: **ስሳ**: instead of **ስደሳ**: "sixty."



4. *Changes produced and suffered by the letter P: and its corresponding vowels I and Ê.*

Some of those changes have been noticed in the preceding. Here is to be added :

A. **P:** of the sixth order, as preformative to Verbs, resolves into the mere vowel *i*, when any letter of the same order is prefixed; *e.g.*

|         | instead of |       | instead of |
|---------|------------|-------|------------|
| ሊሰራ:    | ሊይሰራ::     | ሲመጣ:  | ከይመጣ::     |
| እንደሆን:  | እንደይሆን::   | ሲመለስ: | ከይመለስ::    |
| ከፍገር:   | ከይፍገር::    | የሚቆም: | የምይቆም::    |
| እስከጨርሱ: | እስከይጨርሱ::  | &c.   | &c.        |

B. Under the same circumstances, **P:** not only remains, but, for the sake of assimilation, changes the preceding letter into one of the third order; *e.g.*

ሊያድርግ:: ቢያልቅ:: እንደያወጣ:: &c.

C. The Vowel *I*, when applied, changes the following letters :

**ሊ:** into **P:** :: **ሠ:** and **ሰ:** into **ሸ:** :: **ጥ:** into **ቸ:** :: **ኀ:** into **ኘ:** ::  
**ዘ:** into **ዝ:** :: **ደ:** into **ጀ:** :: **ጠ:** **ጸ:** and **ፀ:** into **ጨ:** ::

|                                             | FOR           |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|
| ሣይ: "painter" . . . . .                     | ሣሊ::          |
| ነጋሽ: "regent" . . . . .                     | ነጋሣ::         |
| ምላሽ: "answer" . . . . .                     | ምላሲ::         |
| ትመቻልሽ: "thou ( <i>f.</i> ) wilt be beaten," | ትመቲአልሽ::      |
| ትደቸልሽ: "thou ( <i>f.</i> ) wilt be saved,"  | ትደኒአልሽ::      |
| ጋዢ: "prince" . . . . .                      | ጋዚ::          |
| ወላጅ: "parent" . . . . .                     | ወላዲ::         |
| ሳጭ: "giver" . . . . .                       | ሳጢ::          |
| ቀራጭ: "piece" . . . . .                      | ቀራጸ: or ቀራጢ:: |
| ዐማጭ: "rebel" . . . . .                      | ዐማፃ::         |

NOTE.—Under the same circumstances, **P:** changes those letters into the fourth order.

D. When words ending in *i* and *é* receive any of the heavy suffixes (*gravia*), or the auxiliary **አለ:** at the end, the third or fifth order is generally changed into the sixth, and **P:** follows :

በረ: "ox." በርያቸው: and በረያቸው::

ጠባቂ: "guardian," "protector." ጠባቂያችን: "our protector."



**ትጠብቁኋለሽ:** "thou (*fem.*) observest," for **ትጠብቁ: አለሽ::**

**ጠብቁኋለሁ:** "I observe," for **ጠብቁ: አለሁ::**

E. When letters of the fifth order are shortened, they are changed into the third; when they are prolonged, they are changed into the fourth; and the original vowel *e* or *i* is represented by **P**::

**ሐደ:** "he went." Imp. **ሐደ:** go!

**ሸጠ:** "he sold."

**ተሻየጠ:** "he bought and sold," "carried on commerce."

5. *Changes produced and suffered by the Letter **፱**: and its corresponding Vowels U and O.*

The letter **፱**: is often contracted into the vowel *o*, and still further into *û*.

A. **፱**: is contracted into *o*. This occurs,

(a) With the second radical in verbs:

**ቆመ:** for **ቆ፱መ::** **ዞረ:** for **ዞ፱ረ::** **ጸመ:** for **ጸ፱መ:**

(b) In substantives:

**ስጥፊ:** "gift," is contracted into **ስጦታ::**

**ኞልፊ:** "power," into **ኞሎት::**

**ሕይወት:** "life," into **ሕይወት::**

**ጸልፊ:** "prayer," into **ጸሎት::**

B. **፱**: and *o* are further contracted into *û*.

(a) In the subjunctive, imperative, and constructive in verbs:

**ደቁም:** "let him stand." **ቁም:** "stand!" **ቁምዋል:** "he is standing."

(b) With the suffixed pronoun 3d person sing. masc., which, to nouns ending in a letter belonging to the sixth order, is attached as *û*; but after a long vowel, and in verbs as **፱**., except after an *û*, where it is changed for **ት**::

**ቤቱ:** "his house."

**ጌታው:** "his master."

**ጠበቀው:** "he observed it."

**መቼት:** "they beat him."

C. *o* and *û*, when an *ā* is joined to them, change the gutturals and palatals into diphthongs of the fourth order, and put other letters into the sixth order, adding **ዋ**::

**ብሎ:** "his saying."

**ብልዋል:** "he is saying."

**ሰጠሁ:** "I gave."

**ሰጠኋቸው:** "I gave them."

**ሸንጎ:** "senate."

**ሸንጋቸው:** "their senate."



D. **ወ**: having been reduced to the vowel *o* in the radicals of verbs, is restored again when the first radical is amplified:

**ተቃወመ**: "he stood against," "resisted," from **ቆመ**: "he stood."

#### 6. *Changes occurring with the Diphthongs.*

Diphthongs of the first order (**ቀ**: **ኧ**: **ከ**: **ገ**:) are, when lengthened, changed into the fourth (**ቋ**: **ኧ**: **ከ**: **ገ**:); when shortened, into the sixth (**ቀ**: **ኧ**: **ከ**: **ገ**:) order:

**ቀጠረ**: "he counted."

Lengthened

Shortened

**ተቋጠረ**: "he made accounts."

**ደቀጠረ**: "let him count."

#### 7. *Reduplication of Letters.*

Reduplication of letters takes place in the formation of nouns and verbs, generally with a design of giving intensity to the original meaning of the word, when the second or third radical is repeated:

**ተናኸ**: "small."

**ተናናኸ**: "very small."

**ተላቅ**: "great."

**ተላላቅ**: "very great."

**መለሰ**: "he brought back."

**ተመለለሰ**: "he walked," *i.e.* "went and returned," "went up and down."

**ተመለሰሰ**: "he returned."

**አደረገ**: "he did," "performed."

**አደራረገ**: "a great work."

#### 8. *Exchange of Letters.*

The following letters are frequently changed one for another, as belonging to the same organ, or at least being similar in sound.

A. *Gutturals*.—**ዐ**: for **አ**:: **አ**: for **ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**:: **ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**: for **ኸ**::  
They write:

**አረፈ**: "he rested," for **ዐረፈ**::

**አበኻ**: "Abyssinia," for **ሐበኻ**::

**አዘነ**: "he regretted," for **ሐዘነ**::

**አፈረ**: "he was ashamed," for **ኀፈረ**::

**ሆነ**: "he became," for **ኸነ**::

**ሔደ**: "he went," for **ኸደ**::

**ኋላ**: "behind," for **ኸላ**::

B. *Gutturals and Palatals*.—**ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኸ**: for **ከ**: *e.g.*

**ኪደከ**: in vulgar language, for **ሐደሀ**: "I go."

**ማኸል**: and **መኸከል**: for **መካከል**: "the middle."

C. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ቀ**: interchanges occasionally with **ጠ**: **ጨ**: and **ጸ**:: **አንቁት**: for **አንጨት**: "wood."

**አስቁንቃቸዋለሁ**: for **አስጨንቃቸዋለሁ**: "I will harass them."

Ps. xviii. 38.



D. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ገ:** and **ጸ:** and **፬::** *e.g.*

**አረ፬:** “to be old,” for **አረገ::**

**ተንጊጊ:** for **ተንጸዋጸዋ:** “to rustle.”

E. *Linguals and Dentals*.—**ለ:** and **ከ:** **ሠ:** and **ሰ:** **ተ:** and **ቸ:**  
(**ዘ:** and **ዠ::**) **ዘ:** and **፬::** **ጠ:** and **ጸ::** **ጸ:** and **ፀ::** *e.g.*

**ልጥር:** “pound,” for **ኮጥር::** **ሠመረ:** “to please,” for **ሰመረ::**

**ሞፍልባት:** “perhaps,” for **ሞፍልበች::** **ተበዛ:** “to redeem,”  
for **ተበ፬::**

**ቀረጠ:** “to cut,” for **ቀረጸ::** **ጸብ:** “quarrel,” for **ፀብ:**

F. *Linguals and Labials*.—Where **ከ:** precedes **በ:** **ጸ:** and **ረ:**, it is, as in the Greek and in other languages, exchanged for **መ:** a liquid of the same order.

**አሞብልታ:** “flute,” for **አንብልታ::**

**ወምፈት:** “a sieve,” for **ወንፈት::**

**ለንጳጌ:** “a small tent,” for the Greek *λαμπήνη*.

G. *Labials*.—**መ:** and **በ::** **መ:** and **ወ::** **በ:** and **ወ::**

**ዝፍሞ:** “rain,” for **ዝፍብ::**

**ወንበር:** and **ወምበር:** “chair,” for **መንበር::**

**ኖረ:** “to remain,” (the **ወ:** resolved into the vowel *o*) from the Eth. **ነበረ::**

9. As for the liquids **ለ:** **መ:** **ከ:** **ረ:** and the changes to which they are liable, they having been embodied in the preceding remarks, nothing further remains to be said concerning them.

#### 10. *Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters.*

Takes place merely in low language.

**መርባት:** “light,” “candle,” for **መብራት::**

**ቅፍቡግ:** for **ቅባኑግ:** “nug-oil.”

**አዝጌር:** for **አግዜር:** contracted from **አግዚአብሔር:** “God.”

**ክሶስ:** “Christ.” **ክስፆን:** and **ኩስታን:** for **ክርስቲያን:** “Christian.”



## PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

## ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

## PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

IN the Semitic Languages, it has been the custom (which also Ludolf has followed, in both his Grammars, of the Ethiopic and of the Amharic Languages) to class the different Parts of Speech under three heads; *viz.* Nouns, Verbs, and Particles; beginning the Etymological part of the Grammar with the Verb, as containing the roots of the whole language. But modern Grammarians have, for important reasons, adopted another course; following the practice of some ancient Arabic and Hebrew Scholars; and as that tripartition presents several inconveniences, especially to such as are unacquainted with the other Semitic Dialects, we divide the Amharic Language into Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections. None of the Abyssinian Languages possess the Article.

2. It will, in a great measure, facilitate the study of the language, before we enter on each part of speech in particular, to premise a few general observations on the original forms of words; because it is in them, and in the manner in which from them the various formations have proceeded, that the peculiarity of every language consists. We must observe, however, that the Amharic not being an original but a derived language (see Introduction, I. III.), we must have frequent recourse to the Ethiopic; and it presents several formations which, in the present state of its knowledge, cannot yet be accounted for.

3. Now the principal elements—as it were the skeleton—of words in any language, consists in the *Consonants*, which are animated by the different Vowels, according to the purposes of formation, flexion, and dialect: and in speaking therefore of original forms, we must look, not to the Vowels, but to the consonants.\* This, when applied to the Amharic, where Vowels are constantly attached to Consonants, signifies that the various orders of a letter do not come into consideration, but the letter itself.

4. One characteristic feature of the Semitic Languages is the prevalence

---

\* This is more clear in the Hebrew, Arabic, and Syriac; in which the Vowels are represented by certain marks above and below the line, which are more frequently omitted than written.



of trilateral forms, which are partly derived from original biliterals, and partly amplified to quadri- and pluri-literals; but, for the greater part, are original, and form the majority. This peculiarity applies also to the Abyssinian Languages; although not to the Amharic with equal force, as to its parent, the Ethiopic.

5. We do not intend to enter into any inquiry about the logical priority of the Parts of Speech; although we believe, that, in the natural development of the mind, the Noun has the precedence before the Verb; but in the grammatical formation of the Amharic Language, the Verb claims the priority, since all its roots are reducible to the first order, called Gěez; *i.e.* "original." For the sake of convenience, however, we begin with the Noun, and follow the order stated under § 1.

## CHAP. I.

### ON THE NOUNS.

In speaking of the Nouns, we have to consider them according to their *Formation* (termination, species), *Gender*, *Number*, and *Declension*.

#### SECTION I.

##### *Formation of Nouns.*

1. As to the FORMATION of Nouns, they are either Simple, Augmented, or Compounds; either *Primitive* or *Derived*. Concerning their termination, they may end in any of the seven orders, except the first. We consider them, first, in respect to their *forms*, as simple, augmented, or compound; secondly, to their *formation*, as primitive or derivative.

2. *Simple* forms; consisting of two, three, or four letters.

A. *Biliterals*.

(a) Ending in the second order:

|                        |             |           |
|------------------------|-------------|-----------|
| ክፈ: bad.               | ብዙ: much.   | ጥላ: full. |
| ንጹ: clean.             | ብሩ: clear.  | ጽሩ: pure. |
| ሠሠ: covetous, a miser. | ሸቱ: spices. |           |

NOTE.—Most of these forms are Ethiopic Verbal Adjectives, originating from, or rather representing, the Passive Participle.

(b) Ending in the third order, generally signifying an agent:

|                        |                       |                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| ሰሪ: workman, diligent. | መሪ: guide.            | ሰፈ: wide, spacious. |
| ዘሪ: sower, seedsman.   | ፈቋ: tanner.           | ዘጰ: ebony.          |
| ግቢ: the inside.        | ጋቢ: current in trade. |                     |



(c) Ending in the fourth order :

|                        |                             |                              |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ፌሳ:</b> a corpse.   | <b>ዋዖ:</b> rent, wages.     | <b>ሽታ:</b> smell.            |
| <b>በጀ:</b> emptiness.  | <b>ቤዛ:</b> ransom.          | <b>በጋ:</b> summer.           |
| <b>ካሳ:</b> equivalent. | <b>ዋዛ:</b> mockery.         | <b>ዋጋ:</b> price.            |
| <b>ገላ:</b> body.       | <b>ሽማ:</b> cloth.           | <b>ጨማ:</b> sole of the foot. |
| <b>ጪኛ:</b> betrothed.  | <b>ውኃ:</b> water.           | <b>ድድ:</b> dumb.             |
| <b>ሌባ:</b> thief.      | <b>እዋ:</b> vessel, utensil. | <b>ምሳ:</b> dinner.           |
| <b>ማታ:</b> evening.    | <b>ሥጋ:</b> flesh.           | <b>ሩጫ:</b> eourse.           |
| <b>ሰራ:</b> work.       | <b>ቃራ:</b> knife.           |                              |

(d) Ending in the fifth order :

|                               |                                |                                 |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>ሎሌ:</b> servant.           | <b>ሐዲ:</b> the king's majesty. | <b>ቅኔ:</b> poetry.              |
| <b>መሴ:</b> a certain measure. | <b>ሰኔ:</b> June.               | <b>ወረ:</b> news.                |
| <b>ቅቤ:</b> butter, oil.       | <b>በረ:</b> ox.                 | <b>ጦሌ:</b> full-grown elephant. |
| <b>ደፔ:</b> disease.           | <b>ጊዜ:</b> time.               | <b>ቋረ:</b> garment.             |
| <b>ጥረ:</b> genuine, original. | <b>ፍረ:</b> fruit.              |                                 |

(e) Ending in the sixth order. These are the most numerous.

|                                  |                    |                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <b>ሀር:</b> silk.                 | <b>ቀን:</b> day.    | <b>ቅን:</b> equity.   |
| <b>ላም:</b> cow.                  | <b>ሆድ:</b> belly.  | <b>ሉል:</b> pearl.    |
| <b>ልክ:</b> measure.              | <b>ልብ:</b> heart.  | <b>ሐግ:</b> law.      |
| <b>ሙቅ:</b> warm.                 | <b>ልጅ:</b> child.  | <b>ማር:</b> honey.    |
| <b>ማቅ:</b> coarse woollen cloth. | <b>ሙዝ:</b> banana. | <b>ሣር:</b> grass.    |
|                                  | <b>ሞት:</b> death.  | <b>ስም:</b> name.     |
| <b>ሩዝ:</b> rice.                 | <b>ራብ:</b> hunger. | <b>ሹም:</b> governor. |
| <b>ሰው:</b> man.                  | <b>ሴት:</b> woman.  | <b>ቁስ:</b> priest.   |

(f) Ending in the seventh order :

|                                  |                             |                                |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>ሚሎ:</b> a fillip.             | <b>ደቦ:</b> a sort of bread. | <b>ርጎ:</b> curds, cheese.      |
| <b>ጀሮ:</b> hen.                  | <b>ሢሶ:</b> a third.         | <b>ጉዞ:</b> a day's march.      |
| <b>ጎጆ:</b> small thatched house. | <b>ጀሮ:</b> ear.             | <b>ኮሶ:</b> cosso (a medicine). |
|                                  | <b>ቀሎ:</b> fried grain.     |                                |

## B. Triliterals.

(a) Ending in the second order are rare :

**ግነኛ:** meeting.      **ስሙሙ:** harmonious.

(b) Ending in the third order, the second letter being generally of the



fourth order. The latter, if their first radical is of the first order, are to be considered as Active Substantives or Adjectives; if of the sixth, as Passive.

|                         |                       |                                      |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>ለጋሚ:</b> groom.      | <b>ለቀሚ:</b> gatherer. | <b>መሐሪ:</b> merciful.                |
| <b>መካሪ:</b> counsellor. | <b>መጋቢ:</b> steward.  | <b>ሰካሪ:</b> drunkard.                |
| <b>በራሪ:</b> flying.     | <b>ነደቁ:</b> mason.    | <b>ነጋሪ:</b> speaker.                 |
| <b>ነጣቂ:</b> rapacious.  | <b>ተማሪ:</b> scholar.  | <b>አላፈ:</b> passenger,<br>passer-by. |

To this class also belong those words whose third letter has been changed from the third to the sixth order. **መለሽ:** "the returner," "restorer"; **ምለሽ:** "answer," "return"; **ቀራጭ:** "cutter"; **ቀራጭ:** "a cut," "piece," &c., for **መለሲ:** **ምለሲ:** **ቀራጢ:** **ቀራጢ::**

(c) Ending in the fourth order:

|                         |                             |                            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>ለመኖ:</b> entreaty.   | <b>ልቡኖ:</b> intellect.      | <b>መሐላ:</b> oath.          |
| <b>መንታ:</b> twins.      | <b>መራራ:</b> bitter.         | <b>መከራ:</b> affliction.    |
| <b>መጸጸ:</b> sour, acid. | <b>መኝታ:</b> sleeping-place. | <b>ሳምባ:</b> the lungs.     |
| <b>ስፍራ:</b> place.      | <b>ሸህላ:</b> potter's earth. | <b>ቅሪታ:</b> remainder.     |
| <b>ባርያ:</b> slave.      | <b>ተልባ:</b> linseed.        | <b>ነቀጣ:</b> a spot.        |
| <b>አለቃ:</b> a chief.    | <b>ከፍታ:</b> height.         | <b>ወርካ:</b> sycamore-tree. |

(d) Ending in the fifth order:

|                                 |                             |                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>ህላዌ:</b> substance, essence. | <b>ፍጻሜ:</b> perfection.     | <b>ምሳሌ:</b> similitude. |
| <b>ሥላሴ:</b> trinity.            | <b>ልባቤ:</b> intellect.      | <b>ቅደሜ:</b> Saturday.   |
| <b>ቡራኪ:</b> blessing.           | <b>ስንጂ:</b> wheat.          | <b>ከርቤ:</b> myrrh.      |
| <b>ወጠጤ:</b> young he-goat.      | <b>ፍሐሴ:</b> August (month). | <b>ዕድሜ:</b> age.        |
| <b>ጀንጁ:</b> cow's hide.         | <b>ዝማራ:</b> song.           | <b>ጥያቄ:</b> question.   |
|                                 | <b>ጉማራ:</b> hippopotamus.   |                         |

NOTE.—It will be observed, that those Nouns, whose first radical is of the sixth, the second of the fourth, and the third of the fifth order, are generally Abstract Nouns of Quality.

(e) Ending in the sixth order:

α Nouns whose three letters are of the same order, generally denoting essence, quality, action, or concrete substances:

|                          |                       |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ልብስ:</b> cloth.       | <b>ልውጥ:</b> change.   | <b>ምንጭ:</b> fountain. |
| <b>ሐርም:</b> prohibition. | <b>ምርጫ:</b> election. | <b>ስልፍ:</b> war.      |
| <b>ሥእል:</b> image.       | <b>ርኩስ:</b> impure.   | <b>ብርድ:</b> coldness. |
| <b>ሸልም:</b> ornament.    | <b>ቅቅል:</b> cookery.  | <b>አህል:</b> corn.     |



|                 |                          |                 |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| ተርፍ: remainder. | ንሽር: eagle.              | ዝምብ: a fly.     |
| ክምር: a heap.    | ዕፅፍ: a fold, time, turn. | ጥልቅ: depth.     |
| ድርቅ: dryness.   | ግምብ: tower.              | ዕንሰ: pregnancy, |
| ጭምር: addition.  | ጽምድ: a pair.             | fœtus.          |
| ፍርድ: judgment.  | ልጥር: a pound.            |                 |

β Nouns whose first letter is the first, and the second and third of the sixth order, generally denoting qualities, concrete substantives, or adjectives:

|               |                |                |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| ለምድ: hide.    | ለምጽ: leprosy.  | መልክ: form.     |
| ረጅም: long.    | ቀንድ: horn.     | በርድ: cold.     |
| በትር: a stick. | ተክል: a plant.  | ነምር: leopard.  |
| አትር: lentils. | ከብት: property. | ወንድ: a male.   |
| ዐምድ: pillar.  | ዘውድ: coronet.  | ደርቅ: dry land. |
| ገብስ: barley.  | ጸጉር: hair.     | ፈትል: thread.   |

γ Nouns whose first and third letters are of the sixth, and second of the second order. They are of Ethiopic formation, being generally Verbal Adjectives and Substantives, the same as § 2. A. a.

|                   |                 |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| ምውት: dead.        | ርቡዕ: fourth.    | ቅቡኡ: anointed.   |
| ቅዱስ: holy.        | ብረር: silver.    | ትሑት: humble.     |
| ንጉሥ: king.        | ንጹሕ: pure.      | ንፈግ: avaricious. |
| አኩል: half, equal. | ውጉዝ: execrated. | ርጉም: cursed.     |
| ዕቡይ: proud.       | ዕውር: blind.     | ግረም: majestic.   |

δ Nouns whose second letter is of the third order. They are of Ethiopic origin, and generally Adjective.

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| መሪር: bitter. | መጸጽ: sour.   | ረቂቅ: thin.   |
| ቀሊል: light.  | ከቢድ: heavy.  | ዓዚዝ: mighty. |
| ጠቢብ: wise.   | ጸቢብ: narrow. |              |

To the same class belong those Adjectives whose middle letter has been changed from the third into the sixth order:

ቀጭን: “thin”; አጭር: “short”; ረጅም: long”; instead of ቀጢን: አጸር: ረዛም::

Exceptions are:

ቃሊብ: “mould”; ቀመረ: “shirt”; ነቢይ: “prophet”; ዘቢብ: “grape”; &c.

ε Nouns whose middle letter is of the fourth order. They are generally Substantives, though sometimes Adjectives.



**ልማድ:** custom.

**ልገብ:** halter.

**ልጊም:** reins, bridle.

**ሕማም:** disease.

**ሕካክ:** itch.

**ሕፃን:** infant.

**መላስ:** tongue.

**መካን:** barren.

ζ Nouns whose middle letter is of the fifth order: **ሰሌን:** **ሐሜት:** **መረት ::**

η Nouns whose middle letter is of the seventh order: **አሞት ::**

θ Nouns Verbal, ending in the feminine —ት :: They will be mentioned hereafter, when speaking of Derived Nouns.

(f) Nouns ending in the seventh order. They are all Substantives.

**ልቅሳ:** lamentation.

**ምርኮ:** exile.

**ምንቶ:** ague.

**ምሰሶ:** a pole.

**መሰፍ:** a canal.

**ሽሐቦ:** wire.

**ቀበሮ:** jackal.

**ቀንጂ:** girl, virgin.

**በረደ:** hail.

**በቀሎ:** mule.

**እርሾ:** leaven.

**ከበሮ:** drum.

**ወስፎ:** awl.

**ዓውሎ:** tempest.

**ዘንደ:** poisonous

**ድርጎ:** a dërgo.

**ጎምቦ:** water-jar.

serpent.

**ጎሮሮ:** throat.

C. *Quadriliterals:*

There are none ending in the second order.

(a) Single Nouns ending in the third order. Such as are derived from any derivation of Verbs are not included here.

**ሰብሳቢ:** gatherer.

**ሰንጣቂ:** a cleaver.

**ሰንጣቂ:** a split.

**በርሳሪ:** a plunderer.

(b) Ending in the fourth order:

**መንጋጋ:** jaw.

**ወረገላ:** beam, car-

**ሽምብራ:** a kind of

**ሽንግላ:** deceit.

riage.

pulse.

**ደብተራ:** a learned

**አለንጋ:** a whip.

**ኩብኩባ:** grass-

man.

**ጉልማሳ:** a young

hopper.

man.

**አቆማደ:** leather bag

(c) Ending in the fifth order:

**ልምላሜ:** verdure.

**ማንትል:** a rabbit.

**ረንፈን:** clemency.

**ሸማግሌ:** an elder.

**በርበረ:** Cayenne pep-

**ትርጓሜ:** translation.

**ደብዳቤ:** bill of account.

per.

(d) Ending in the sixth order:

**ለምላም:** green.

**መንደር:** village.

**ምስኪን:** poor.

**ምንዘር:** adultery.

**ወልሰል:** chain.

**ረግረግ:** mud.



|                 |                   |                |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| ሰንዝር: a span.   | ሰፍነግ: sponge.     | ቀምበር: yoke.    |
| ቅንድብ: eye-brow. | ትንኩል: shrewdness. | አሸከር: a youth. |
| አጠገብ: side.     | ድምብር: frontier.   | ድንግል: virgin.  |

(e) Ending in the seventh order :

|                  |               |                      |
|------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| መሰንቆ: a harp.    | ቆርቆር: pewter. | አምልኮ: religion, god- |
| ወደዘር: prince, or | ዝንጅር: monkey. | liness.              |
| princess.        |               | ደንቆር: stupid.        |

D. There are not many Simple Nouns of five and more letters: some of those which exist, we will mention here :

|                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| ሃረንጊደ: green.                 | ሐመልማል: vegetables.   |
| ተንተራሰ: supporter of the head. | ነበልገል: flame.        |
| አንቀላል: egg.                   | አንቅልፍ: sleep.        |
| አውራሪስ: rhinoceros.            | ደንገጥር: chamber-maid. |
| ዝንጉርጉር: chequered.            |                      |

3. In speaking of *Augmented Nouns*, we do not refer to those casual additions they receive by inseparable Prepositions at the beginning, or Pronouns at the end; but we speak of those augmentations at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, by which their original signification is modified. In order, however, not to fall into an unnecessary repetition, we postpone this subject till we come to speak of *Derived Nouns*. (See 5. c.)

4. *Compounds* are formed (a) from the Ethiopic *status constructus*; the *nomen regens* and the *nomen rectum* being combined into one word, as in our "house-door" for "house's door," only the reverse of our order. In the Ethiopic, as in the Hebrew, the word (nominative) which precedes, and which, according to our ideas, should have the nominative form, is changed; and the word (genitive) which follows, and which we should expect to be changed, is not changed at all. As this peculiarity does not affect the Amharic Language any further, we do not enter into it, but content ourselves with giving only a few instances.

Compounds.

|                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| ገለቤት: master of the house, self.                               |
| ገለንጅራ: fellow, associate.                                      |
| ቤተሰብ: { domestic, one belonging }<br>{ to a house or family. } |
| ቤተንጉሥ: state-room, parlour.                                    |

Analysis.

|                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| ገለ: master, and | ቤት: house.                        |
| ገለ: . . . .     | አንጅራ: bread.                      |
| ቤት: house . . . | { ሰብ: Eth. i. g. Amh.<br>ሰው: man. |
| ቤት: house . .   | ንጉሥ: king.                        |

Thus are many Ethiopic words compounded, especially their Christian names; e.g. ኃይለ: ማርያም: Haila Maryam, "the Power of Mary," commonly Hailu; ገብረ: አግዛኤብቴር: or ገብረ: አምላክ: Gabra



Egziabêh, or Gabra Amlāk, contr. Gabramlāk, commonly Gabru, or Zāēgziabhêr, or Zāāmlāk, "Servant of God," &c.

(b) From Amharic words, combining either noun with noun, or the noun with any other part of speech:

Compounds.

ግራጃ: left-hand.

ግዛጃ: free-will, liberty.

ግደጃ: empty-handed.

ኤጌታ: O my Lord!

Analysis.

ግራ: and ጃጃ::

ግዛ: (dominion?) & ጃጃ: hand.

ግደ: empty, & ጃጃ::

የኔ: mine, & ጌታ: Lord, master.

5. *Primitive Nouns*, strictly speaking, are those whose origin cannot be traced to any other source but to themselves. Now there are a good number in the Amharic Language which are easily recognised as Primitive in this sense; but there are many others which can be called so only in a relative acceptation of the word, because in the Ethiopic, from whence they are taken, they are not Primitive; although either the original word is not current in the Amharic, or the mode of its derivation is not accordant with the idiom of that language. The first of these two latter clauses induces us to consider a number of Amharic Nouns as comparatively Primitive; whilst the second constrains us to leave to others the same derivative character which they have in the Ethiopic.

As the Primitive Nouns are found only among the *simple* forms, we refer to the above exhibition, N<sup>o</sup>. 2.

#### A. *Biliterals*:

Class (a) is entirely derivative.

Class (b) also.

Class (c) contains a number of Primitives; *e.g.* ረሳ: በደ: በዛ: በጋ: ካሳ: ዋጋ: ገላ: ሸማ: ጪማ: ውጋ: ድጋ: ሥጋ: ነጋ: ማታ: ደደ: ሌላ: ቃራ::

(d) *Primitives* of the *fourth* class: ሎሎ: ሐዲ: መሲ: ሰኔ: ጊዜ: ጦሎ: ቋራ::

(e) In the fifth class, the majority are Primitives.

(f) In the sixth class, ሚሎ: ደሮ: ጀሮ: ጎጂ: ኮሶ: ደሶ::

#### B. *Triliteral Primitives*:

In class (c), መንታ: ሳምጣ: ሸህላ: ጣርያ: ተልጣ: ማሸላ: ነቀጣ: ወርካ:

In class (d), ሰንደ: ነቀሴ: ሐምሌ: ጀንደ: ከርቤ: ወጠጤ: ሰደሚ: ጉማራ:

In class (e), almost the whole of the first (α); about half of the second (β);



TABLE OF PRIMITIVE FORMS OF NOUNS.

| BILATERALS.                                                                                                                                          | TRILATERALS.                                                                                                                                                                                                | QUADRILATERALS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | PLURALITERALS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. ultinâ ሂ፡<br>ደራ: black horse.<br>ድራ: neck-chain.<br>ዘጳ: ebony.                                                                                    | 1. ult. ሆ፡<br>አሉሶ: orchitis.<br>ከንቱ: vanity.<br>ቁምረ: little pigeon.                                                                                                                                         | 1. ult. ሂ፡<br>ወድምብ: a certain quadruped.<br>ቀርንብ: he-goat.<br>ዓገራ: bird of prey.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 1. ult. ሂ፡<br>ከሪር: filix mas.<br>መስላል: stairs, ladder.<br>አምላክ: God.<br>ሃምሃም: sort of gourds.<br>ኅንካር: nail.<br>ቀላጽል: k'welquäl.<br>አገር: bedstead.                                                                                                         |
| 2. ult. ሃ፡<br>ሽማ: cloth.<br>ደባ: gourd.<br>ማተ: grandmother.<br>ማተ: evening.<br>ራዓ: corpse.<br>ውኃ: water.<br>ደማ: hatchet.<br>ቀራ: raven.<br>ገደ: alcove. | 2. ult. ሂ፡<br>ጠመት: chalk.<br>ተትገ: urethra.<br>አምላ: worthless.<br>ዕንቁ: gem, pearl.                                                                                                                           | 2. ult. ሃ፡<br>ሠረገላ: beam, carriage.<br>አንባ: lion.<br>ብርኩማ: small leather cushion.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 2. ult. ሂ፡<br>ሀረገገደ: green.<br>ጉራማደላ: a certain bird.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 3. ult. ሂ፡<br>መሰ: a massé.<br>ጊዜ: time.<br>ኸማ: sort of pearl.<br>ዝደ: duck.<br>ጦላ: full-grown elephant.<br>ጽራ: garment.                               | 3. ult. ሃ፡<br>መከራ: affliction.<br>ጉብፍ: sort of lizard.<br>ማሽገ: glue.<br>ጎደፍ: path.<br>ደጉሳ: dagussa.<br>ሽላደ: geminus muscle.<br>ጠባብ: leavened bread-cake.                                                    | 3. ult. ሂ፡<br>ብርኩማ: sort of bread.<br>አማካላ: sort of weeds.<br>አምሃላ: certain bird.<br>አቆማደ: leather bag.<br>ሽማብራ: sort of pulse.<br>ደሞትራ: centipede.<br>አንባላ: hollowed gourd.<br>ገረገማ: gap of a tooth.                                                                                                                    | 3. ult. ሂ፡<br>ጉሪር: unfemented wine.<br>ሃውልት: obelisk.<br>ምንዝር: adultery.<br>ማርማር: inquiry.<br>ሃምሃም: yellow pigeon.<br>ኅንካር: shrewdness, craftiness.<br>ቀንቀን: moth.<br>ሰንዝር: span.<br>ሰንባሽ: back-door.<br>አንኮድ: acrimonious fruit.                          |
| 4. ult. ሀ፡<br>ሰው: man.<br>ሰል: pearl.<br>ሽል: fetus.<br>ማቆ: sack-cloth.<br>ሰት: woman.<br>ብር: silver (dollar).<br>ሆድ: belly.                            | 4. ult. ሃ፡<br>ተበ.ፆ: chaff.<br>ፍራዓ: sheep's skin made up for dress.<br>ጽላማ: sausage.<br>ቃፍፋ: triangular piece of cloth in trousers.<br>ቸፈዋ: silver bracelet.<br>ደቃላ: bastard.<br>ፍላዋ: arrow.<br>ምላላ: oblong. | 4. ult. ሃ፡<br>ቀንር: jackal.<br>ማሰር: boiling vessel.<br>ምሰሶ: pole.<br>ወረደ: caprine animal.<br>ብቀሎ: mule.<br>አገባ: hand-drum.<br>ጋገፍ: ibis.<br>ቦጽኦ: sort of bread.<br>አደፍ: a certain tree.<br>መሰፍ: channel.<br>ጉርደ: bran.<br>ዓውሎ: tempest.<br>ምንዝር: certain fever.<br>ቀንጾ: girl, virgin.<br>ምሳት: fire-place.<br>ገረር: throat. | 4. ult. ሃ፡<br>አንባላ: egg.<br>አንኮርደ: a weed.<br>መንከሰን: chin.<br>መቆላምት: large knife.<br>ሰንበርደ: game of chess.<br>አንቅልፍ: sleep.<br>ልክሰክሰ: light-minded.<br>መንኮራከር: carriage.<br>ቀንጽርደ: curled hair.<br>አምሳደ: martingal.                                        |
| 5. ult. ሆ፡<br>ሰት: good.<br>ማሰ: fillip.<br>ደዎ: sort of bread.<br>ፈቆ: gazelle.<br>ኮሶ: kosso (anthelmintic).                                            | 5. ult. ሃ፡<br>ደጋዓ: strong, prominent.<br>አፍፍ: straw mat.<br>ባቃላ: lupine.<br>ወርካ: sycamore-tree.<br>ቡሉኦ: young dog.<br>ባርዎ: slave.                                                                           | 5. ult. ሀ፡<br>ብርብ: myrrh.<br>ሰንጽ: wheat.<br>አርጌ: old.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 5. ult. ሆ፡<br>ጉሪር: unfemented wine.<br>ሃውልት: obelisk.<br>ምንዝር: adultery.<br>ማርማር: inquiry.<br>ሃምሃም: yellow pigeon.<br>ኅንካር: shrewdness, craftiness.<br>ቀንቀን: moth.<br>ሰንዝር: span.<br>ሰንባሽ: back-door.<br>አንኮድ: acrimonious fruit.                          |
|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 6. ult. ሆ፡<br>ቀንር: jackal.<br>ማሰር: boiling vessel.<br>ምሰሶ: pole.<br>ወረደ: caprine animal.<br>ብቀሎ: mule.<br>አገባ: hand-drum.<br>ጋገፍ: ibis.<br>ቦጽኦ: sort of bread.<br>አደፍ: a certain tree.<br>መሰፍ: channel.<br>ጉርደ: bran.<br>ዓውሎ: tempest.<br>ምንዝር: certain fever.<br>ቀንጾ: girl, virgin.<br>ምሳት: fire-place.<br>ገረር: throat. | 5. ult. ሆ፡<br>ከርከር: a certain quadruped.<br>ከርከር: flat basket.<br>አራዛዛ: sort of beads.<br>ተምሳት: tobacco.<br>ብርገዳ: raw flesh.<br>አሸከር: boy, girl.<br>ቀምበር: yoke.<br>ቋከመን: strong knife.<br>ሠቅሠቅ: window-frame.<br>አርከም: large blackbird.<br>ተካሪስ: necklace. |







none of the third ( $\gamma$ ); few of the fourth ( $\delta$ ), **ቃሊብ፡ ተሪክ፡ ቀመሰ፡ አሪዝ፡ ነቢይ፡ ዘቢብ፡**, and fifth ( $\epsilon$ ), **ልገብ፡ ልጊም፡**; but none of the sixth ( $\zeta$ ) division.

In class ( $f$ ), the greater part are Primitives.

C. *Quadriliteral Primitives*:

(a) None.

(b) **መንጋጋ፡ ወረገላ፡ ሽምብራ፡ አለንጋ፡ ኩብኩባ፡ ደብተራ፡ አቆማደ፡**

(c) Few; e.g. **መንተሌ፡ በርበሬ፡**

(d) The majority.

(e) **መሰንቆ፡ ቆርቆር፡ ወይዘሮ፡ ዝንጅሮ፡ ደንቆሮ፡**

D. Those mentioned as simple *pluriliterals* are all Primitive.

6. *Derived Forms* take their origin either from Nouns, Verbs, or Particles; and are formed in various ways, either by *contraction* (elision), or by *change*, or by *augmentation* of their letters.

A. By *Contraction* (see Part I. Ch. VII. 2.), and *Elision* (ibid. 3.), they are changed more seldom within the limits of the Amharic than in their transition from the Ethiopic Language into the Amharic. It takes place most frequently in Biliterals:

| Amh.                    | Eth.             | Amh.               | Eth.               |
|-------------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>ንጹ፡</b> pure,        | from <b>ንጹሕ፡</b> | <b>ምሳ፡</b> dinner, | from <b>ምሳሕ፡</b>   |
| <b>በሬ፡</b> ox,          | .. <b>ብዕራይ፡</b>  | <b>ላም፡</b> cow,    | .. <b>ላህም፡</b>     |
| <b>ማር፡</b> honey,       | .. <b>መሃር፡</b>   | <b>ሣር፡</b> grass,  | .. <b>ሣዕር፡</b>     |
| <b>ቆቤ፡</b> butter, oil, | .. <b>ቆብኡ፡</b>   |                    | sometimes Amharic, |

Sometimes in Triliterals, derived from the Ethiopic Quadriliterals:

| Amh.                 | Eth.              | Amh.                    | Eth.               |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>ብርቱ፡</b> strong,  | from <b>ብርቱዕ፡</b> | <b>ስሙሙ፡</b> harmonious, |                    |
| <b>ባሕሪ፡</b> essence, | .. <b>ባሕርይ፡</b>   |                         | from <b>ስሙዕሙዕ፡</b> |

B. By *change* of one, two, or of all the primitive letters, according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 4, 5, 7. A few instances will suffice for illustration:

| Derivative.                       | Primitive.                          |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>ቀደም፡</b> that which is before, | } from <b>ቀድም፡</b> the former time. |
| <b>ቀደሚ፡</b> saddle's pommel,      |                                     |
| <b>ቀደሚ፡</b> Saturday,             |                                     |
| <b>ቀደሰ፡</b> holy,                 | } from <b>ቀደሰ፡</b> to sanctify.     |
| <b>ቀደሰ፡</b> consecration,         |                                     |
| <b>ቀደሰ፡</b> sanctifier,           |                                     |



| Derivative.                     | Primitive.                                 |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <b>መለሽ</b> : a restorer,        | } from <b>መለሰ</b> : to return, bring back. |
| <b>ምለሽ</b> : return, answer,    |                                            |
| <b>ምሳሌ</b> : likeness,          | } from <b>መሰለ</b> : to resemble.           |
| <b>ምሳይ</b> : kind, resemblance, |                                            |
| <b>ንጉሥ</b> : king,              | } from <b>ነገሠ</b> : to be king.            |
| <b>ነጋሽ</b> : regent,            |                                            |
| <b>አደኝ</b> : hunter,            | } from <b>አደነ</b> : to hunt.               |
| <b>አደን</b> : game,              |                                            |

C. *Augmentation* of letters in the derivation of Nouns takes place either *in the beginning* (preformation), or *in the middle* (reduplication), or *at the end* (afformation).\* The letters used for this purpose are **መ**: **ሰ**: **ተ**: **ኑ**: **ኸ**: **አ**: **ወ**: **ያ**:: Of these, **መ**: **ሰ**: **ተ**: **ኑ**: **አ**: **ወ**: **አሰ**: and **አሰተ**: are *prefixed*; and **መ**: **ተ**: **ኑ**: **ኸ**: **ወ**: and **ያ**: are *affixed*. *Reduplication* takes place by repeating any of the radical letters.

(a) *Preformation*:

**መ**: is used for Infinitives, and retained in Nouns derived therefrom:

**መጠበቅ**: the watching.

**መጠበቅያ**: watch-house, from **ጠበቀ**: to watch.

**ተ**: **ተን**: **አ**: **አሰ**: **አሰተ**: and **አን**: are retained in Nouns derived from those derivations of Verbs which have these characteristic Preformatives:

| Noun.                                  | Verbal derivation.                    | Radix.                           |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>ተናጋሪ</b> : speaker.                 | <b>ተናገረ</b> : to speak.               | <b>ነገረ</b> : to say, tell.       |
| <b>ተንቀጥቆጭ</b> : trembler.              | <b>ተንቀጠቀጠ</b> : to tremble.           | <b>ቀጠቀጠ</b> : to bruise.         |
| <b>አፈራሽ</b> : breaker.                 | <b>አፈረሰ</b> : to break.               | <b>ፈረሰ</b> : to burst.           |
| <b>አሰታማማ</b> : nurse for sick persons. | <b>አሰታመመ</b> : to nurse sick persons. | <b>አመመ</b> ::                    |
| <b>አንሻታኝ</b> : cheater.                | <b>አንሻተተ</b> : to cheat.              | <b>ሻተተ</b> : ( <i>non occ.</i> ) |

**አ**: is prefixed to Verbs, and one of the radical letters doubled; *e.g.*

**አገገብ**: **አቀማመጥ**: **አደራረግ**::

**ተ**: and **ተ**: are prefixed to Verbs to form Nouns of action; *e.g.*

**ተዕገሥት**: **ተምሕርት**::

Sometimes the **አ**: or **ተ**: is cut off, and **ኑ**: retained in these Preformatives:

\* This is analogous to the Hebrew **נִתְּנָה** and the Arabic **يَتَسَمَّى** Nouns.



| Noun.           | Verbal Derivation.  | Radix.              |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| ነ-ድጊድ: thunder. | አንጉድጉድ: to thunder. | ጉድጉድ: Eth. to beat. |
| ነጠብጣብ: a drop.  | ተንጠበጠበ: to drop.    | ጠበጠበ: to trot.      |

ጠ: occasionally interchanges with the መ: of the Infinitive, the Noun being considered no longer as an Infinitive: *e.g.*

ጠምበር: (or ጠንበር:) chair.      መንበር: the sitting, (Eth.)  
ነበረ: to sit.

ጠምፈት: (for መምፈት:) or ጠንፈት: "sieve"; from ነፈ: to blow, to fan, to make wind.

(b) *Reduplication*; repetition of any of the radical letters:

| Derivative.            | Primitive.             |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| ተናኸ: very small.       | ተናኸ: small.            |
| ተላላቅ: very great.      | ተላቅ: great.            |
| መልካካም: very beautiful. | መልካም: fine, beautiful. |

In Verbal Nouns, which take it from the Verb, Reduplication is retained:

| Nouns.         | Verbal Derivation. | Radix.          |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| ተመላላሽ: walker. | ተመላለሰ: to walk.    | መለሰ: to return. |

Reduplication with transposition:

ጥርጣሪ: doubt.      ተጠራጠረ: to doubt.      ጠረረ::

(c) *Affirmation* of the letters መ: ተ: ነ: ኘ: ዊ: and ዎ::

α The Affirmation of ልም: to Substantives, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Fulness, Intenseness, &c., similar to the Latin *osus*, and English *ous* and *ful*; *e.g.*

| Form in ልም.                            | Origin.         |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------|
| መልካም: beautiful ( <i>formosus</i> ).   | መልክ: form.      |
| ሀጂም: glutton (man of a large stomach). | ሀጅ: belly.      |
| ፍርዖም: fertile.                         | ፍረ: fruit.      |
| ወፍሪም: thick.                           | ወፍረ: thickness. |

β Affirmative ማ: forms Substantives:

አጃጥማ: mouse-coloured mule.      አጃጥ: mouse.  
ወሽማ: fornicator.      ወሻ: dog.

γ The Affirmative ተ: ላት, et, it, ስታ, ላት, ላ, produces feminine forms:

| Form in ተ::                 | Origin.                       |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ልጅት: birth.                 | ወለደ: to bring forth.          |
| ትምህርት: doctrine.            | ተማረ: to learn.                |
| ንጽሕት: ( <i>fem.</i> ) pure. | ንጽሐ: ( <i>masc.</i> ) pure.   |
| ልጅቱ: daughter.              | ልጅ: son.                      |
| ፍርሃት: fear.                 | ፈረ: (Eth. ፈርሀ:) to be afraid. |
| ቅሪት: remainder.             | ቀረ: to remain, to be left.    |
| ዝቅት: lowness.               | ዝቅ: low.                      |



δ The Afformative **ኣ**: **ኣኣ**: forms Substantives of Quality, from Verbs which in Latin frequently answer those ending in *tas*, in English in *ty*:

Forms in *ān*.

Verbs.

**ሠልጣን**: authority.

**ሠለጠ**: & **ሠለጠኑ**: to have authority.

**በርሃን**: light, clarity.

**በረ**: Eth. **በርሃ**: to be light or clear.

**ኪደን**: covenant.

**ከዩደ**: **ተከዩደ**:

**ቀልጣን**: delicacy, vanity.

**ቀለጠ**: to melt.

**ቀረጣን**: offering, eucharist.

**ቀረበ**: to take the sacrament.

Exceptions are, **ጉንደን**: “ant”; and **ጉምሩን**: “cough.”

ε **ኑ**: and **ነት**: are affixed to Adjectives, Substantives, and Particles, in order to form Abstract Substantives; generally answering our *ence*, *ance*, *ness*, *cy*, *ty*, *hood*, and *ship*.

Forms in **ኑ**: and **ነት**:

Radices.

**ልበኑ**: intelligence, sagacity.

**ልበ**: heart, mind.

**ልዕልኑ**: highness.

**ልዕል**: (Eth.) high.

**ልዩነት**: difference, variety.

**ልዩ**: different, various.

**ልጅነት**: childhood, sonship.

**ልጅ**: child, son.

**ሐፃንነት**: infancy.

**ሐፃን**: infant.

**መልካምነት**: beauty, goodness.

**መልካም**: beautiful, good.

**መምህርነት**: teachership.

**መምህር**: teacher.

**ቅዱስኑ**: holiness.

**ቅዱስ**: holy.

**እውነተኝነት**: veracity.

**እውነተኛ**: true.

**አስማተኝነት**: witchcraft.

**አስማተኛ**: sorcerer.

ζ The Afformative **ኛ**: is affixed to Nouns, to form Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, or Quality.

Forms in **ኛ**:

Radices.

**ሀኪተኛ**: lazy, an idler.

**ሀኪት**: idleness.

**መርከበኛ**: sailor.

**መርከብ**: ship.

They often assume a **ተ**: before the **ኛ**:

**ስራተኛ**: labourer.

**ስራ**: work, labour.

**እምቢተኛ**: refractory.

**እምቢ**: I will not.

η The Ethiopic Afformative **ኤ**: is affixed to Nouns Substantive with the same effect as those formed by the Afformative **ኛ**: They, besides, form Gentile Nouns.

Form in **ኤ**:

Radix.

**ወንጌልኤ**: evangelist.

**ወንጌል**: gospel.

θ The letter **ያ**: is affixed,

Ⲣ To *Infinitives*, to form Nouns of Agency, Instrumentality, Locality, Object, &c.; whereby it must be observed, that when the letter to which it is



# TABLE OF DERIVATIVE NOUNS.

## I. SIMPLE FORMS.

### 1. Verbal Adjectives and Substantives, with *Ult.* or *Penultima* *U*::

**ክፈ**: bad, evil.  
**ሙት**: dead.  
**ሹም**: officer, governor.  
**ሰሙሙ**: harmonious.  
**ብርቱ**: strong.  
**ፍጹም**: perfect.  
**ጉንጂል**: castrated.

### 2. Nouns, with *U*:: *Ultima* or *Penultima*.

(See Part I. Ch. VII. 4. c.)

#### A. *Ultima*.

##### (a) *Active*.

**ሰሪ**: labourer, artist.  
**ፈቂ**: tanner.  
**ጋቢ**: full measure.  
**ገዢ**: a ruler.  
**ሰጪ**: a giver.  
**ሸሽ**: a fugitive.  
**ሰጋሚ**: an ostler.  
**ተማሪ**: a scholar.  
**አድራጊ**: a performer.  
**አሳላፊ**: butler.  
**አስተማሪ**: teacher.  
**አስተማሚ**: nurse for sick persons.  
**ሰንጣቂ**: one who splits.

##### (b) *Passive*.

**ገቢ**: the inside.  
**ቁራሽ**: a morsel.  
**ጥመቂ**: that which is dipped.  
**ሰንጣቂ**: a splinter.

##### B. *Penultima*.

**ሙረ**: bitter.  
**ሰቢ**: wise.  
**እንግሊዝ**: English.

### 3. *Ult.* and *Penult.* *U*::

#### A. *Defectives*.

##### (a) *Ultima*:

**ሰራ**: work.  
**እቃ**: instrument, utensil.  
**ሳምር**: lungs.  
**አርባ**: forty.

##### (b) *Penultima*.

**ላም**: cow.  
**ማር**: honey.  
**ሣር**: grass.  
**ሙሳሽ**: tongue.

#### B. Nouns of Essence, State, Action, Quality, derived chiefly from Verbs.

**ልመና**: petition.  
**ተራራ**: mountain.  
**ሙራራ**: bitter.  
**ሰፍራ**: place.  
**ጥንቅቃ**: soothsaying.  
**ሸንግላ**: fraud.

### 4. Verbs in *U*: form *ሀሃሂ*: and *ሁሁሁ*:

**ሀላፊ**: the being, existence, essence.  
**ቡረኪ**: blessing, benediction.  
**ልምላሚ**: verdure.  
**ተርጓሚ**: interpretation.

### 5. *Ultima* *U*::

#### (a) *Passive Penultima* *U*:: Vid. 1.

##### (b) *Penult.* *U*: Vid. 2.

##### (c) *Form* *ሀሃሂ*::

**ልማድ**: custom, habit.  
**ልጊም**: reins.  
**ንፈሽ**: wind.

##### (d) *Form* *ሀሃሁ*: and *ሀሁሁ*:: are generally *Feminine*.

**ግላፕ**: interior margin of a written page.  
**ሙረት**: dust.

##### (e) *Form* *ሀሀሀ*::

**ልምጽ**: leprosy.  
**ፈጅም**: long, high.

### 6. *Ethiopic Infinitives* in *U*::

**ልቅሶ**: lamentation.  
**ምርሶ**: exile.  
**ሸሐሶ**: wire.  
**አምልኮ**: Divine Service, Religion, godliness.

### 7. *Contracted Preformatives*.

**ነቡብግብ**: a drop.  
**ነጉደጊድ**: thunder.

### 8. *Further Contractions*.

**ክሶስ**: Christ.  
**ክሳን**: Christian.  
**አገዢ**: God.  
**ደጃጃ**: provincial governor, &c. &c.

## II. AUGMENTED FORMS.

### 1. *Augmented by Preformatives*.

#### (a) *Infinitives* with *ሙ*::

**ሙጠቦት**: the keeping.  
**ሙዓርግ**: step, degree. } (*Eth.*  
**ምሥላህት**: sacrifice. } forms.)

#### (b) *With* *እ*: before *ረ*: and *ከ*::

**እረብ**: (for **ረብ**.) head, chief, Räs.  
**እድርድር**: Enārea, n. pr.

#### (c) *Intensive forms* with *እ*: and reduplication.

**አቀማመጥ**: trestle, seat.  
**አተጀጅገ**: education.

#### (d) *Feminines* &c. with *ተ*::

**ተግሣድ**: reproof, discipline.  
**ተጉገሥት**: patience.  
**ተምህርት**: doctrine.  
**ተምላሽ**: threshold.

#### (e) *With* *ወ*: instead of *ሙ*:

**ወምበር**: seat, bench, &c.

### 2. *Augmented by restoring original* *ወ*: and *ዋ*::

**ቀዋሚ**: standing slave, i.e. wood-cutter.  
**ሸዋዬ**: seller.

### 3. *By reduplication*.

**ተፈፈሽ**: very little, very small.  
**ሙልካካም**: very handsome, very good.

### 4. *By Afformatives*.

#### (a) *ām* to *Substantives* and *Adjectives*, denoting *fulness*.

**ሙልካም**: beautiful.  
**ፍርዖም**: fruitful.  
**ሆደም**: glutinous.

#### (b) *ማ*: to *Simple Roots*, forming *Substantives*.

**ሰማ**: a certain fever.  
**ኮርማ**: stallion.  
**ወሽማ**: fornicator.  
**አሂማሚ**: ash-coloured (*lit.* mouse-coloured) mule.

#### (c) *T*: *at*, *et*, *it*, *ut*, *te*: and *tu*: *Feminine* *Forms*.

**ልደት**: birth, nativity.  
**ሻሎት** (**ሻልወት**): power.  
**ትምክሕት**: boasting, glorying.  
**ልጅቱ** (**ልጅቱ**): daughter.  
**ግርሙት**: majesty.  
**ፍርሃት**: fear.  
**ዝሙት**: fornication.  
**ቀረታ**: the rest, remainder.  
**ዝቅታ**: lowness.  
**ሰጥወት**: gift.

#### (d) *ān* to *Simple Roots*, forms *Substantives* of *Essence* (*Concrete* *Substantives*), *Power*, *Quality*.

**ሥልጣን**: authority, privilege.  
**ብርሃን**: light, clarity.  
**ኪዳን**: covenant, treaty.  
**እዓን**: infant.  
**ቅልጣን**: delicacy.  
**ቅርጣን**: offering, eucharist.  
**ጉንጃን**: ant.  
**ግምፈን**: coughing, a cold.

#### (e) *f*: and *ነት*: to *Substantives*, *Adjectives*, and *Particles*, form *Abstract Substantives* of *Quality*, *State*, &c.

**ልብፍ**: intelligence, elevation.  
**ልዕልፍ**: highness, elevation.  
**ዝምድፍ**: relationship.  
**ልዩነት**: difference, variety.  
**ልጅነት**: sonship.  
**ሙልካምነት**: goodness, beauty.  
**እውነትነት**: verity.  
**አምላካዊነት**: divine nature.

#### f. *f*: to *Nouns* and *Particles*, forms *Adjectives* and *Substantives* of *Office*, *Habit*, and *Quality*.

**ሀኪተፍ**: idler.  
**ሙርከቦፍ**: navigator, sailor.  
 Often assumes **ተ**:  
**አዘንተፍ**: mournful.  
**ሰራተፍ**: workman, labourer.  
**እምስተፍ**: unwilling.

#### (y) *āwī*, with the same effect as the preceding.

**ወንጌላዊ**: evangelist.  
**ፈሪሳዊ**: Pharisee.  
**ፍረንሳዊ**: French.

#### (h) *P*: expressed or implied, forms *Nouns* of *Instrumentality*, *Agency*, *Locality*, *Object*, *Individuality*.

a *To Infinitives*.  
**ማሠርዋ**: a tie.  
**ሙላኪዋ**: measuring instrument.  
**ሙላገጂ**: object of scorn.  
 β *To Simple Roots*.  
**ቅምዋ**: spoil, booty.  
**ቅምሽ**: bit, morsel, taste.  
**ቶርጊዋ**: rubbish, sweepings.







to be joined, is one of those changeable Linguals or Dentals mentioned in Part I. Ch. VII. 4 c., both **Ṣ**: and the letter to which it was to be joined, are dropped, and exchanged for such a cognate Lingual or Dental as combines the joint sounds. (See the above-mentioned paragraph.)

Forms with **Ṣ**:, the **Ṣ**: being either expressed or implied.

**መልከ.Ṣ**: measure.

**መላገጀ**: object, means of scorn.

**ማለፍ.Ṣ**: passage, excellent.

**መፋተምṢ**: printing-office.

**መመለሻ**: place, or means of returning.

**ማሠር.Ṣ**: a tie, band, bond.

Infinitives.

**መልከ**: the measuring.

**መላገድ**: the scorning.

**ማለፍ**: the passing.

**መፋተም**: the printing.

**መመለስ**: the returning.

**ማሠር**: the binding.

☞ To Simple Roots, with the same object and in the same manner as to Infinitives:

Forms with **Ṣ**::

**ቅምṢ**: booty.

**ቅምሻ**: a bit, taste.

**ጉትቻ**: trail, train.

**ጽርጊ.Ṣ**: rubbish.

Roots.

**ቅማ**: to plunder.

**ቅምስ**: the tasting.

**ጉትት**: the dragging.

**ጽርግ**: sweeping.

## SECTION II.

### *On the Species of Nouns.*

1. Nouns are to be considered, either as *Substantives*, names of things, or as *Adjectives*, names of properties. In the Amharic, as in the other Semitic Languages, they both belong together; and they have been jointly treated in the preceding Section as to their Formation. It remains now to say a few words concerning the Adjectives.

2. As to their Formation, but few of them, as the preceding Tables show, are *original*: such are,

**በጎ**: good.

**ደህና**: well.

**አመራ**: bad.

**ሞላላ**: oblong.

**ደገሳ**: prominent.

**አሮጌ**: old.

Even these are but primarily Adjectives; and when isolated, may be, and are, used as Substantives. Most Adjectives are of derivative forms, being derived either from Verbs (see Table II.) or from Substantives; *e.g.*

**ግረም**: **አዋቂ**: **መሪር**: **መልከኛ**: **መልካም**: **አሳዊ**::

Participial Adjectives, **የሚገር**: **የተመነ**::

3. As for Comparison, the Amharic Language, like the Hebrew, has no



Adjective form to express the Comparative or Superlative: we therefore must defer this subject to the Syntax.

4. The Numeral Nouns will be treated in a separate chapter.

We now proceed to the consideration of the *Gender* of the Nouns.

### SECTION III.

#### *On the Gender of the Nouns.*

1. The Amharic Nouns have but two *Genders*, Masculine and Feminine. We shall endeavour to point out a few general rules, showing what Nouns belong to either of the two genders, and by which forms they are to be recognised. We have to complain, however, that there is yet much confusion; both masculine and feminine forms being alternately applied to words where the sex is not palpably distinguished.

A. Masculine are:

(a) The names of God, angels, and men; also the names of nations, and of all male animals:

|               |                 |                     |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| ኤግዚአብሔር: God, | ሰይጣን: Satan.    | ዓረብ: an Arab.       |
| the Lord.     | ገብርኤል: Gabriel. | ሀበሺ: an Abyssinian. |
| አምላክ: God.    | ሰው: man.        | ፍረንሲስ: a Frenchman. |
| የሱስ: Jesus.   | ዮሐንስ: John.     | አንበሳ: a lion.       |
| መልአክ: angel.  |                 |                     |

(b) The names of the sun and the stars, of ranks and offices of men:

|            |               |                |
|------------|---------------|----------------|
| ፀሐይ: sun.  | ሹም: governor. | ጠገቂ: guardian. |
| ኮከብ: star. | ገዢ: ruler.    | ሎሌ: servant.   |

B. Feminine are:

The names of women and female animals; the names of the moon, the earth, countries, towns, &c.; plants; the names of female ranks and offices; collective names; and the names of several abstracts:

|                      |                  |                         |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| ማርያም: Mary.          | ከተማ: city, camp. | ወደዘሮ: princess, lady.   |
| ደሮ: hen.             | መንደር: village.   | አመቤት: mistress.         |
| ጨረቃ: moon.           | ጎንደር: Gondar.    | ገረድ: female servant.    |
| ምድር: earth, country. | ዛፍ: tree.        | ኑግሴ: assembly, society. |
| ሐበሻ: Abyssinia.      | አበባ: a flower.   |                         |

And see 2.

C. Common, are several conditions of life; as, "child," "slave," and others, where the termination of the word does not distinguish the sex.



## 2. The two Genders are distinguished,

(a) By the addition of distinct words denoting the Male and the Female. These are: **ወንድ**: and **ተባት**: for Males, and **ሴት**: and **አንስት**: for Females: besides this, **አውራ**: for several male animals, who are without this distinction considered as females; as, goats, fowl, &c.: *e. g.*

**ወንድ**: **ልጅ**: a son, boy.

**ሴት**: **ልጅ**: a daughter, girl.

**የንስሳ**: **ተባት**: male of animals.

**የንስሳ**: **አንስት**: female of animals.

**አውራ**: **ፋያል**: he-goat.

**አውራ**: **ደሮ**: cock (he-fowl).

In Shoa, they carry this distinction further; calling “clayish earth” **ወንድ**: or **ተባት**: **ምድር**: (male earth), and “loose earth” **አንስት**: or **ሴት**: **ምድር**: (female earth). They call wood which splits perpendicularly, **ወንድ**: **አንጩት**: “male wood”; and wood which splits transversely, **ሴት**: **አንጩት**: “female wood.” Maria-Theresa dollars, which have the requisite coinage, **አንስት**: **ብር**: “female dollars”; and those which are any way deficient, being M. T. dollars, **ተባት**: **ብር**: “male dollars.” The latter distinction obtains in all Abyssinia.

(b) The Female is distinguished by the termination **ት**: **ታ**: and **ቱ**: (See the Table of Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(c) The same by **ፍ**: and **ነት**: (See Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(d) The Primitives are mostly *Masculines*.

(e) As to the Derivative forms, the following rule obtains:

Classes I. 1. 2. 3. 6. and II. 4. *f. g.* are predominantly Masculine; and Classes I. 4. and II. 4. *c. d. e.* predominantly Feminine. The rest are of Mixed Gender.

3. The remaining Nouns are undetermined as to the sex; the Adjective and Verb being promiscuously applied to them in the Masculine and in the Feminine Gender.

4. Several Adjectives and Substantives, whose form is Masculine, are changed into a Feminine form:

| Masculine.                 | Feminine.                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>ንጹ</b> :                | <b>ንጹሐት</b> : pure.           |
| <b>ብሩ</b> :                | <b>ብርሀት</b> : clear.          |
| <b>ግሩም</b> :               | <b>ግርምት</b> : wonderful.      |
| <b>ጠባቂ</b> :               | <b>ጠባቂቱ</b> : guardian.       |
| <b>አሮጌ</b> :               | <b>አሮጊት</b> : old.            |
| <b>ወራሽ</b> : heir.         | <b>ወራሽቱ</b> : heiress.        |
| <b>ሀኪተኛ</b> :              | <b>ሀኪተኛዬቱ</b> : lazy.         |
| <b>አረማዊ</b> : heathen man. | <b>አረማዊት</b> : heathen woman. |



## SECTION IV.

*On the Number of the Nouns.*

1. The *number* is but twofold; viz. *Singular* and *Plural*. We might add the *Collective*; but that being considered either as a body, when it is Singular, or as an aggregate of individuals, when it is plural, it constitutes no particular form; and we therefore proceed to consider these two, the Singular and the Plural; there being no Dual in this language.

2. As the Singular is that form in which each Noun, before it is changed, presents itself, we need not say any thing about it, but direct our attention at once to the formation of the *Plural* Number.

3. The truly Amharic Plural is very simple; it has but one form, and that is the termination *otsh* (Tigrê *ot*); in which we recognise the Hebrew **ות**, the Arabic **ات**, and the Ethiopic *āt*; e. g.

| Singular.    |           | Plural.       |            |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| <b>ቤት</b> :  | house.    | <b>ቤቶች</b> :  | houses.    |
| <b>ወብ</b> :  | dog.      | <b>ወቦች</b> :  | dogs.      |
| <b>ልጅ</b> :  | child.    | <b>ልጆች</b> :  | children.  |
| <b>አባት</b> : | father.   | <b>አባቶች</b> : | fathers.   |
| <b>ጠባቂ</b> : | guardian. | <b>ጠባቂች</b> : | guardians. |
| <b>በጎ</b> :  | good.     | <b>በጎች</b> :  | good.      |

NOTE.—The Plural termination of several Nouns ending in the fifth order is divided into two Consonants; the original letter being put into the sixth order, and a **ፑ**: being added, to which the Plural **ች**: is affixed; e. g.

**ምሳሌቶች**: similitudes, from **ምሳሌ**:

4. But besides this Amharic, we have the following Ethiopic Plural forms; which sometimes are applied, although the true Amh. Plural always may be put.

(a) Termination *ān*.

For the Derivates, I. 1. II. 4. *g.* and some other forms; e. g.

| Singular.            | Plural.               | Singular.               | Plural.         |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>ቅዱስ</b> : holy.   | <b>ቅዱሳን</b> : saints. | <b>ፈሪሳዊ</b> : Pharisee. | <b>ፈሪሳውያን</b> : |
| <b>ጠቢቅ</b> : wise.   | <b>ጠቢቅን</b> :         | <b>ፃጥኦ</b> : sinner.    | <b>ፃጥኦን</b> :   |
| <b>ሕያው</b> : living. | <b>ሕያዋን</b> :         | <b>ነጂደ</b> : poor.      | <b>ነጂዶን</b> :   |
| <b>ሙት</b> : dead.    | <b>ሙታን</b> :          | <b>መምህር</b> : teacher.  | <b>መምህራን</b> :  |

NOTE.—Irregular: **አይሁዲ**: “Jew.” **አይሁድ**: “Jews.”

(b) Termination *āt*.

The Feminines of the Plural Adjectives in *ān*.

**ቅዱሳት**: **ነጂዶት**: **ቡረካት**: **ሕያዋት**:



The Derivative forms terminating in *ān*.

**ሥልጣን**: authority. **ሥልጣናት**:: **ብርሃን**: light. **ብርሃኖች**: lights.  
**ሕፃን**: infant. **ሕፃናት**: infants.

Besides these :

Singular.

Plural.

**ሰማይ**: heaven.

**ሰማያት**: heavens.

**ደመና**: cloud.

**ደመናት**: clouds.

**ፈጽል**: letter.

**ፈጽላት**: letters.

**ቃል**: word.

**ቃላት**: words.

**ምሥጢር**: secret.

**ምሥጢራት**: secrets.

Some forms ending in the fifth order :

**ምስሌ**: likeness.

**ምስሌያት**: likenesses.

**ጊዜ**: time.

**ጊዜያት**: times.

Words ending in the servile **ት**::

**አመት**: year.

**አመታት**: years.

**ሰማዕት**: martyr.

**ሰማዕታት**: martyrs.

Other forms :

**ሐዋርያ**: apostle.

**ሐዋርያት**: apostles.

**ንፋስ**: wind.

**ንፋሳት**: winds.

**ሐግ**: law.

**ሐገገት**: laws.

**ቤት**: house.

**አብያት**: houses.\*

**ካህን**: priest.

**ካህናት**: priests.

**ጳጳስ**: metropolitan.

**ጳጳሳት**: metropolitans.

**ኢጲስቆጶስ**: bishop.

**ኢጲስቆጶሳት**: bishops.

**ዲያቆን**: deacon.

**ዲያቆኖች**: deacons.

(c) Form **አግቡር**::

**አገር**: village.

**አህጉር**: villages.

(d) From **አግጣር**::

**ወትር**: string.

**አውታር**: strings.

**ሐዝብ**: people.

**አሐዛብ**: people.

**ሶፍ**: bird.

**አዕዋፍ**: birds.

**ዐምድ**: pillar.

**አአማድ**: pillars.

(e) **ገባሪት**::

Singular.

Plural.

**አርፄ**: wild.

**አራዊት**: wild beasts.

**ሠርፄ**: beam.

**ሠራዊት**: army.

\* Used only in **አብያት**: **ክርስቲያኖች**: "Churches," from **ቤት**: **ክርስቲያን**: "a Church."



## (f) አጋብርት::

ቁስ: priest.

መንፈስ: spirit.

አንበሳ: lion.

መከላከል: judge.

ከንፈር: lip.

ኮከብ: star.

አምላክ: God.

ነምር: leopard.

መልአክ: angel.

መስኮት: window.

ሊቅ: chief.

ቦቅለ: mule.

ጋረ: demon.

ቀሳውስት: priests.

መንፈስት: spirits.

አንበሳት: lions.

መከላከልት: judges.

ከንፈር: lips.

ኮከብት: stars.

አምላክት: gods.

አንምርት: leopards.

መልአክት: angels.

መስኮት: windows.

ሊቃውንት: chiefs.

ቦቅለት: and አገቅልቶት: mules.

አጋንንት: demons.

Rare forms:

ንጉሥ: king.

ሞክሮ: monk.

ነገሥት: and ነገሥታት: kings.

ሞክሮች: ሞክሮስት: &amp; ሞክሮስት: monks.

5. It is well to attend to these various forms, as they frequently occur in the Amharic Bible as well as in conversation: but it must be borne in mind, that they are all of Ethiopic origin, and superseded by the simple Amharic form *otsh*; and a beginner will never be mistaken in using the latter, until he is sufficiently acquainted with the language to know where he has to apply any of the other forms.

## SECTION V.

*On the Declension of the Nouns.*

The Declension of Nouns is very simple and uniform. Nouns are inflected through four Cases, equally in the Singular and the Plural, *i.e.* the Nominative, the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative. One example may suffice to show the whole mode of proceeding:

|      | Singular.                   | Plural.          |
|------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| Nom. | ቤት: a house.                | ቤቶች: houses.     |
| Gen. | የቤት: of a house, a house's. | የቤቶች: of houses. |
| Dat. | ለቤት: to a house.            | ለቤቶች: to houses. |
| Acc. | ቤትን: a house.               | ቤቶችን: houses.    |

## OBSERVATIONS:

(a) The Genitive answers the Eth. **H**:, and is not to be confounded with the Pronouns Relative or Distributive.



The Accusative Case must not be confounded with the Interrogative Adverb ን: , nor with the termination ን: of Nouns. On the Construction, and on the various uses of the Accusative, see Syntax.

2. It occasionally happens, that they make use of the Ethiopic Genitive or *status constructus*, i.e. that mode of construction which prevails in the Hebrew, and which has been noticed in the First Section of this Chapter, § 4. The two nouns, which stand in a genitive relation to each other, one of which is the *regens* (Nominative), and the other the *rectum* (Genitive), are so closely connected as to appear as one word. The Genitive follows the Nominative, and receives the tone or accent; in doing which, the preceding Noun, the Nominative, is modified: in the Hebrew it is shortened: in our case, the last letter, if it is of the sixth order, is changed into the first, and the two words are considered as one compound, separated merely by the (:) colon; but even this, in the Amharic, is often dropped, especially when the Genitive begins with a vowel consonant, or when it is a short word:

ባለ: ቤት: and ባለቤት: “master of the house.”

ባለፈ: for ባለ: ዕፈ: “owner of debts,” i.e. “creditor” or “debtor.”

Another change is produced by the affixion of Pronouns to Nouns, of which we shall speak under the head of Inseparable Pronouns.

## CHAP. II.

### ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numerals are of two kinds, *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The Cardinals specify the number of things which are the subject of speech: the Ordinals exhibit the order in which they occur.

2. The *Cardinal Numbers* in the Amharic are as follow:

| Cipher. | Amharic.                | English.       | Cipher. | Amharic.                 | English.      |
|---------|-------------------------|----------------|---------|--------------------------|---------------|
| ፩:      | 1. አንድ: }<br>f. አንዷት: } | One, a,<br>an. | ፳:      | 30. ሠላሳ:                 | Thirty.       |
| ፪:      | 2. ሁለት:                 | Two.           | ፴:      | 40. { አርባ: or<br>አርብዓ: } | Forty.        |
| ፫:      | 3. ሶስት:                 | Three.         | ፵:      | 50. አምስት:                | Fifty.        |
| ፬:      | 4. አራት:                 | Four.          | ፷:      | 60. ስድሳ: or ስሳ:          | Sixty.        |
| ፭:      | 5. አምስት:                | Five.          | ፸:      | 70. ሰባ: or ሰባዓ:          | Seventy.      |
| ፮:      | 6. ስድሳት:                | Six.           | ፹:      | 80. ስመንፆ:                | Eighty.       |
| ፯:      | 7. ሰባት:                 | Seven.         | ፺:      | 90. ዘጠኝ:                 | Ninety.       |
| ፰:      | 8. ስምንት:                | Eight.         | ፫:      | 100. መቶ:                 | Hundred.      |
| ፱:      | 9. ዘጠኝ:                 | Nine.          | ፲፫:     | 1000. ሺህ:                | Thousand.     |
| ፲:      | 10. አሥር:                | Ten.           | ፪፻:     | 10000. አልፍ:              | Ten Thousand. |
| ፳:      | 20. ሁያ:                 | Twenty.        |         |                          |               |



*Compound Cardinals.*

|                    |           |                    |            |
|--------------------|-----------|--------------------|------------|
| ፲፩፤ 11. አሥራ፡ አንድ፡  | Eleven.   | ፲፮፤ 16. አሥራ፡ ስድስት፡ | Sixteen.   |
| ፲፪፤ 12. አሥራ፡ ሁለት፡  | Twelve.   | ፲፯፤ 17. አሥራ፡ ሰባት፡  | Seventeen. |
| ፲፫፤ 13. አምራ፡ ሶስት፡  | Thirteen. | ፲፰፤ 18. አሥራ፡ ስምንት፡ | Eighteen.  |
| ፲፬፤ 14. አሥራ፡ አራት፡  | Fourteen. | ፲፱፤ 19. አሥራ፡ ዘጠኝ፡  | Nineteen.  |
| ፲፭፤ 15. አሥራ፡ አምስት፡ | Fifteen.  |                    |            |

The same order is observed with all the Tenth, to a Hundred; *e.g.*

ህያ፡ አንድ፡፡ ሥላሳ፡ ሁለት፡፡ አርባ፡ ሶስት፡ &c.

The numbers upward of a Hundred are joined to the Hundreds by ከ፡ or ተ፡; *e.g.*

፫፯፤ 106. መቶ፡ ከስድስት፡፡ . . . . One hundred and six.

፫፰፤ 160. መቶ፡ ተስሳ፡ or መቶ፡ ከስሳ፡ One hundred and sixty.

፫፱፤ 199. መቶ፡ ከዘጠኝ፡ ዘጠኝ፡፡ . . . One hundred & ninety-nine.

፪፫፤ 200. ሁለት፡ መቶ፡ . . . . Two hundred.

፲፰፻፩፤ 1841. ሺህ፡ ተስምንት፡ መቶ፡ ካርባ፡ አንድ፡ or አሥራ፡ ስምንት፡ መቶ፡ ካርባ፡ አንድ፡ One Thousand Eight Hundred and Forty-one.

3. The *Ordinal* Numbers are formed by the termination **ኛ**፡ affixed to the *Cardinals*.

አንደኛ፡፡ መጀመርያ፡ } the First.  
or ፈተኛ፡፡

ሁለተኛ፡ the Second.

ሶስተኛ፡ the Third.

አራተኛ፡ the Fourth.

አምስተኛ፡ the Fifth.

ስድስተኛ፡ the Sixth.

ሰባተኛ፡ the Seventh.

ስምንተኛ፡ the Eighth.

ዘጠኙኛ፡ and ዘጠነኛ፡ the Ninth.

አሥረኛ፡ the Tenth.

አሥራ፡ ሁለተኛ፡ the Eleventh.

&c. &c.

The Simple Numbers, Twenty, Thirty, and upwards, scarcely admit of the termination **ኛ**፡, but are generally given to the Cardinal form. In compounds, the last number receives the termination **ኛ**፡; as,

ህያ፡ አንደኛ፡ ምዕራፍ፡ the Twenty-first chapter.

4. They have no particular form for the Distributive Numbers; but they express them, either by reiteration, as,

አንድ፡ አንድ፡ (contr. አንደንድ፡) one-by-one, some, several, one or other, singly, severally.

ሁለት፡ ሁለት፡ two-and-two;



Or by **ኦዋ**: or **ኦሀ**: as,

**ኦያንድንድ**: each, every. **ኦሁልት**: by twos, by pairs, two-and-two, every two, every couple, &c. &c.

**በየሶስት ቀን**: every three days.

### CHAP. III.

#### ON THE PRONOUNS.

1. The Amharic *Pronouns* are, as to their *logical* character, divided, as in other languages, into, 1. Personal; 2. Possessive; 3. Demonstrative; 4. Relative; 5. Interrogative; 6. Reflective; and 7. Distributive Pronouns. As to their *forms*, they are classed, as in other Semitic Languages, into Separable and Inseparable Pronouns. We begin with the *Separable Pronouns*. They are Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Reflective.

#### SECTION I.

##### *Separable Personal Pronouns.*

They are Three for the Singular, and Three for the Plural. The Singular has some peculiarities. The First Person has not the Gender expressed: the Second and Third have distinct forms for the Masculine and for the Feminine Gender: the Second Person has, besides, three distinctions of honour, as the following Paradigm shows:

|         | SINGULAR.            |                               |                              |         | PLURAL.              |  |
|---------|----------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---------|----------------------|--|
|         | Masc.                | Com.                          | Fem.                         |         | Com.                 |  |
| 1 Pers. |                      | <b>ኔኔ</b> : I.                |                              |         | <b>ኔቺ</b> : we.      |  |
| 2 Pers. | <b>ኣንተ</b> :         |                               | <b>ኣንት</b> :<br><b>ኣንቺ</b> : | } thou. | <b>ኣላንት</b> : you.   |  |
|         |                      | <b>ኣንቺ</b> :<br><b>ኣርሰዋ</b> : |                              |         |                      |  |
|         |                      | } you.                        |                              |         |                      |  |
| 3 Pers. | <b>ኣርሱ</b> : he, it. |                               | <b>ኣርሱዋ</b> : she, it.       |         | <b>ኣርሱዋው</b> : they. |  |

NOTE. (a) On the application of the three different forms for the Second Person: **ኣንተ**: and **ኣንቺ**: are applied to inferiors, to God, to intimate friends; and in universal address, where you need not pay any regard to rank, &c. **ኣንቺ**: is used for a *lesser*; **ኣርሰዋ**: for a *higher* degree of honour. These two forms resemble the German *Ihr* (in Switzerland *Er*), and *Sie*, and the Italian *Voi* and *Lei*, for the Second Person Singular.

(b) In speaking of a *distinguished* person, the form of the Third Person Plural is used, as a mark of honour.



2. The Declension is the same as with the Nouns.

| SINGULAR. |                              |          |        |          |         |                              |        |                               |         |                                 |
|-----------|------------------------------|----------|--------|----------|---------|------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------|
| 1st Pers. |                              | 2d Pers. |        | 3d Pers. |         |                              |        |                               |         |                                 |
| Com.      |                              | Masc.    |        | Fem.     |         | Masc.                        |        | Fem.                          |         |                                 |
| N.        | አኔ: I.                       | አንተ::    | አንቺ::  | አንቱ::    | አርሰዎ::  | you.                         | አርሱ::  | he, it.                       | አርሰዋ::  | she, it.                        |
| G.        | የኔ: {<br>of me, my,<br>mine. | የንተ::    | የንቺ::  | የንቱ::    | የርሰዎ::  | {<br>of you, your,<br>yours. | የርሱ::  | {<br>of him, it,<br>his, its. | የርሰዋ::  | {<br>of her, her,<br>hers, its. |
| D.        | ለኔ: to me, me.               | ለንተ::    | ለንቺ::  | ለንቱ::    | ለርሰዎ::  | to you, you.                 | ለርሱ::  | {<br>to him,<br>him, it.      | ለርሰዋ::  | {<br>to her,<br>her, it.        |
| A.        | አንን: me.                     | አንተን::   | አንቺን:: | አንቱን::   | አርሰዎን:: | you.                         | አርሱን:: | him, it.                      | አርሰዋን:: | her, it.                        |

| PLURAL. |  |                        |  |                             |  |          |  |                         |  |
|---------|--|------------------------|--|-----------------------------|--|----------|--|-------------------------|--|
| 1 Pers. |  | 2 Pers.                |  | 3 Pers.                     |  |          |  |                         |  |
| Nom.    |  | አኛ: we.                |  | አላንት: ye, you.              |  | አርሰቸው::  |  | they.                   |  |
| Gen.    |  | የኛ:: of us, our, ours. |  | የላንት:: of you, your, yours. |  | የርሰቸው::  |  | of them, their, theirs. |  |
| Dat.    |  | ለኛ: to us.             |  | ለላንት:: to you.              |  | ለርሰቸው::  |  | to them.                |  |
| Acc.    |  | አኛን: us.               |  | አላንትን: you.                 |  | አርሰቸውን:: |  | them.                   |  |



SECTION II.

*Separable Possessive Pronouns.*

They are formed by the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns ; and are as follows :

| Singular.                                                   | Plural.                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>PḲ:</b> my, mine.                                        | <b>PḲ:</b> our, ours.      |
| <b>PḲṯ:</b> <i>m.</i> <b>PḲṯ:</b> <i>f.</i> thy, thine.     | <b>PḲṯ:</b> your, yours.   |
| <b>PḲṯ:</b> <i>m.</i> <b>PḲṯ:</b> <i>f.</i> your, yours.    |                            |
| <b>PḲṯ:</b> <i>m.</i> his. <b>PḲṯ:</b> <i>f.</i> her, hers. | <b>PḲṯ:</b> their, theirs. |

SECTION III.

*Demonstrative Pronouns.*

They are two in number ; one for near, and one for remote objects.

1. *Demonstrative for Near Objects.*

**Ḳṯ:** *masc.* **Ḳṯ:** or **Ḳṯ:** *fem.* "This."

Shoa Dialect: **Ḳṯ:** *masc.* **Ḳṯ:** *fem.*

DECLENSION.

COMMON FORM, IRREGULAR.

|      | Masc.                   | SINGULAR.   | Fem.                    |
|------|-------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>              | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | contr. <b>Ḳṯ:</b> this. |
| Gen. | <b>PḲṯ:</b>             | <b>PḲṯ:</b> | .. <b>PḲṯ:</b> of this. |
| Dat. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>              | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | .. <b>Ḳṯ:</b> to this.  |
| Acc. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b> & <b>Ḳṯ:</b> | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | .. <b>Ḳṯ:</b> this.     |

PLURAL.

Common Gender.

|      |             |    |             |        |             |           |
|------|-------------|----|-------------|--------|-------------|-----------|
| Nom. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | or | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | contr. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | these.    |
| Gen. | <b>PḲṯ:</b> | .. | <b>PḲṯ:</b> | ..     | <b>PḲṯ:</b> | of these. |
| Dat. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | .. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | ..     | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | to these. |
| Acc. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | .. | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | ..     | <b>Ḳṯ:</b>  | these.    |

SHOA FORM, REGULAR.

|    | SINGULAR. |                | PLURAL.                            |
|----|-----------|----------------|------------------------------------|
|    | Masc.     | Fem.           | Common.                            |
| N. | ኸዜህ:      | ኸዜህች: this.    | ኸለዜህ: or ኸነዜህ:                     |
| G. | የዜህ:      | የዜህች: of this. | contr. ኸሊህ: &c. the same as above, |
| D. | ለዜህ:      | ለዜህች: to this. | but the ዜ: prevailing throughout.  |
| A  | ኸዜህን:     | ኸዜህችን: this.   |                                    |



## ANOTHER REGULAR FORM, OCCASIONALLY USED IN SHOA.

| SINGULAR.           |                  | PLURAL.          |
|---------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Masc.               | Fem.             | Com.             |
| N. ደህ:              | ደህች: contr. ደች:: | ኸለዞህ: contr. ዞህ: |
| G. የደህ:             | የደህች: . . የደች::  | የለዞህ: . . ዞህ:    |
| D. ለደህ:             | ለደህች: . . ለደች::  | ለለዞህ: . . ለህ:    |
| A. ደህን: }<br>ደህንን:: | ደህችን: . . ደችን:   | ኸለዞህን: . . ኸህን:: |

2. *For Remote Objects.*

| SINGULAR. |                | PLURAL.                          |
|-----------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Masc.     | Fem.           | Common.                          |
| N. ያ:     | ያች: that.      | ኸለዚያ: & ኸነዚያ: contr. ኸልያ: those. |
| G. የዚያ:   | የዚያች: of that. | የለዚያ: & የነዚያ: . . ዞልያ: of those. |
| D. ለዚያ:   | ለዚያች: to that. | ለለዚያ: & ለነዚያ: . . ለልያ: to those. |
| A. ያን:    | ያችን: that.     | ኸለዚያን: & ኸነዚያን: . . ኸልያን: those. |

## FORM OCCASIONALLY OCCURRING IN SHOA.

| SINGULAR. |               | PLURAL.                                        |
|-----------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Masc.     | Fem.          |                                                |
| N. ኸዛ:    | ኸዛች: that.    | Like the above, only contracting<br>ዚያ: to ዛ:: |
| G. የዛ:    | የዛች: of that. |                                                |
| D. ለዛ:    | ለዛች: to that. |                                                |
| A. ኸዛን:   | ኸዛችን: that.   |                                                |

NOTE.—The Demonstrative Pronouns form Adverbs; which see, under the head of Adverbs.

## SECTION IV.

*Interrogative Pronouns.*

There are four: One Personal, ማን: *pl.* ኸለማን: “who?” “which?” “what sort of?” One Impersonal, ምን: “which?” “what?” One Common, የት: “what?” “which?” One Universal, ምንድር: “what?”

The Personal is ማን: “who?” “which?” *e.g.*

ማን: አደረገ: ደህን: *Who* did this?

ደህ: ማን: ነው: (or ማነው:) *Who* is this?

ከሁለቱ: ማን: *Which* of both?

The Impersonal is ምን: “which?” “what?” *e.g.*

ምን: አደረግህ: *What* hast thou done?

ምን: ቤት: *Which* house?



The Universal Interrogative Pronoun is **ምንድር**: “what?” *e.g.*

**ይህ: ምንድር: ነው:** *What is this?*

**ማን:** and **ምን:** are declinable, thus:

| SINGULAR.                                       |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Pers.                                           | Impers.                                               |
| Nom. <b>ማን:</b> who? which?                     | <b>ምን:</b> what? which?                               |
| Gen. <b>ምማን:</b> of whom? whose? of which?      | <b>የምን:</b> of what? of which? whose?                 |
| Dat. <b>ለማን:</b> to (for) whom? to (for) which? | <b>ለምን:</b> to (for) what? to (for) which? wherefore? |
| Acc. <b>ማንን:</b> whom? which?                   | <b>ምንን:</b> what? which?                              |
| PLURAL.                                         |                                                       |
| Nom. <b>አለማን:</b> who? which?                   | <b>አለምን:</b> which?                                   |
| Gen. <b>የአለማን:</b> whose? of which?             | <b>የአለምን:</b> of which? whose?                        |
| Dat. <b>ለአለማን:</b> to whom? to which?           | <b>ለአለምን:</b> to which?                               |
| Acc. <b>አለማንን:</b> whom? which?                 | <b>አለምንን:</b> which?                                  |

**ምንድር**: has no Plural; and is defective in the Singular, having no Accusative Case.

Besides the preceding, they have the Interrogative Pronoun **የት**: or Euphonic **የቱ**: “what?” “who?” “which?” It is indeclinable, and used chiefly in forming Adverbs, by joining with Prepositions; as, **ከንጂት**: **ወጂት**: &c.

#### SECTION V.

##### *Reflective Pronouns.*

They are three, **ባለቤት**:: **ራስ**: and **ነፍስ**: with the signification of *self*. They assume the Suffixes of the Possessive Pronoun, as in the English *myself, thyself, &c.* So is in all Abyssinia **ራስ**: with Suffixes **ራሴ**: **ራስህ**: **ራስሽ**: **ራስወ**: **ራሱ**: **ራስዋ**: **ራሳችን**: **ራሳችሁ**: **ራሳቸው**: “myself,” “thyself,” &c. **ባለቤት**:, with Suffixes, is not used in Shoa; but in N.W. Abyssinia, it is common. **ነፍስ**: with Suffixes is used in all Abyssinia, though not so often as **ራስ**:: But the reflective mode of speaking is more frequently used in Verbs, without these Pronouns, as will be shown afterwards.

#### SECTION VI.

##### *Distributive Separable Pronoun.*

This is **አያንደያንድ**: “each,” “every,” with Suffixes. As it is composed of a double **አንድ**: and the distributive **አያ**:, it has been numbered already among the Distributive Numerals.



## SECTION VII.

*Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are the following:

**ማንም**: any, each, every one, whoever, whosoever.

**ማንኛው**: *m.* **ማንኛይቱ**: *fem.* whosoever.

**ሁሉ**: all, each, every, any.

**ሌላ**: other.

**አንደኛ**: some, something.

1. **ማንም**: **ማንኛው**: and **ማንኛይቱ**: are used only in the Singular, nor receive they any Suffix. When used with the Verb in the negative, they adopt the reverse to their natural signification, "none," "none whatever."

2. **ሁሉ**: is rather the Substantive **ሁል**: "totality," with Suffixes. It assumes all Suffixes, and is declinable; but has no Plural.

3. **ሌላ**: is used in both the Plural and the Singular Numbers, and is declinable.

4. **አንደኛ**: is declinable, and used only in the Singular.

5. **አያሌ**: "some," "several," is declinable, and has but one number. Besides this, the words, "some" and "such," are circumscribed by Verbs; *e.g.* "Some men like it," **ዋጋወደኑ አሉ**: *lit.* "There are men who like it." "Such:" **እንደህ: ያለ**: or *pl.* **እንደህ: ያሉ**:: "who is," or "who are so."

## SECTION VIII.

*Inseparable Pronouns.*

They are, with regard to their character, Personal, Possessive, Relative, and Distributive; and with regard to their position, they are either Prefixes or Suffixes.

1. *Personal Suffixes to Verbs.\**

They consist partly in modifications of the Personal Pronoun; and are annexed to any part of the Verb except the Infinitive; for that Mood, being considered in this respect as a Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes.

---

\* We do not speak of those personal designations the Verbs receive at their beginning or end; because they are so intimately connected with the Verb, that we cannot consider them separately.







### 3. *Prefixed Relative Pronouns.*

There are two; *i.e.* **P**: for the Preterite, and **Pḡ**: for the rest; *e.g.* **ḡḡḡḡ: ḡḡḡḡ:** "the man who came." **ḡḡḡḡ: ḡḡḡḡ:** "The day which comes"; *i.e.* "the coming," "following day." See more under the Verbs.

### 4. *Prefixed Distributive Pronoun.*

There is but one, which has been mentioned already, under the Numerals: it is, **ḡḡ:** or **ḡḡ:: ḡḡḡḡḡḡ: ḡḡ:** "Every three days." Prepositions have the power of absorbing the first letter; when care must be taken not to confound the remaining **P** — with the Relative Pronoun; bearing in mind, that the Relative itself would be absorbed by the Preposition: nor stands it, except before Verbs.

## CHAP. IV.

### ON THE VERBS.

The Verb being, next to the Noun, the most essential part of speech, we are to give it our fullest consideration. In entering upon it, we treat, 1. On its Formation and Quality; 2. On the Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs; 3. On their Flexion; 4. On their Conjugation; 5. On the Affixion of Pronouns to Verbs.

#### SECTION I.

##### *Formation and Quality of Verbs.*

1. The Verb, in general, seems to represent the chief developement of those roots of the language which are contained in the Noun. The original idea of the Noun is exhibited as a thing of time, found in a certain condition, and undergoing or producing various actions and changes. This consideration implies, that the Verb, in general, originates in the Noun. In the Hebrew, we can trace its course from the Primitive Nominal Form, through the Participle (in Kal), to the 3d pers. masc. preterite; the latter being, in all the Semitic Languages, the grammatical root of the Verb. In the Amharic, the Constructive Mood, of which we shall speak afterwards, seems to be the medium of transition from the Primitive Noun to the 3d pers. masc. preterite of the Verb.

2. Now the latter, the 3d masc. pers. sing. of the preterite in the Simple Forms of Verbs, constitutes, as has been just now alluded to, the origin of all the other Verbal Forms; the same as, in our languages, the Infinitive; or in the Greek, the Latin, the Italian, and others, the 1st pers. sing. of the present tense: on this account it is put forward, for grammatical and



lexical purposes, as the radix, or rather (because the true radices of the Verbs are contained in the Noun) as the stem, from which all the other forms branch off. In the Amharic, it presents various formations, as well as the Noun—bilitera, trilatera, quadrilatera, and plurilatera: but in it, as well as in the Noun, the majority consists of trilateral forms; which majority is still augmented, whenever the present contracted biliteral forms, and many plurilaterals evidently amplified, are restored to their original fulness or simplicity.

3. In reference to *Quality*, then, the Verbs present two grand divisions; *i.e.* *Perfect* and *Imperfect* Verbs, which again may be sub-divided in other classes. *Perfect* Verbs are those which are flexible in, at least, several Derivations, and throughout all the Moods, Tenses, and Persons in Conjugation, without losing any of their Radicals. *Imperfect* Verbs are either Defective, Augmented, or Irregular.

NOTE.—(a) Perfect Verbs may be divided into Primitives, *i.e.* whose origin cannot be traced to any further root; and Derivatives, which have for their origin either a Noun (Denominatives), or another Verb (Verbals). We subjoin here a few specimens of each.

## PRIMITIVES.

|                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| ቀበረ: he buried.           | ቀሠፈ: he chastised. |
| መለሰ: he turned, returned. | ሸፈነ: he covered.   |
| ሰገደ: he worshipped.       |                    |

## DENOMINATIVES.

## Original Noun.

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| ከበረ: he was honoured. | ክብር: honour.           |
| ገለጸ: he revealed.     | ግልጽ: the public.       |
| መሰከረ: he testified.   | ምስክር: witness.         |
| ሰነበተ: he remained.    | ሰንበተ: Sabbath.         |
| በረከተ: was flatulent.  | በረከተ: blessing.        |
| አመሰቀለ: crucified.     | መስቀለ: cross, crucifix. |

## VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

## Original Verb.

|                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| መሰገነ: he was glorious.      | ገነ: it flourished, he was glorious. |
| መሠረተ: he laid a foundation. | ሠራ: he built.                       |

(b) Under Defective Verbs, we mean, (1) Those which occasionally lose some of the Radicals; and (2) Such as have not all the Moods or Tenses, or Persons in conjugation. They will be mentioned in their proper places.



(c) Irregular Verbs are of various kinds :

A. Such in which the Afformatives are irregular.

B. Such as have either the first or second, or second and third Radical Letters contracted.

C. Geminants.

D. Reduplicated and Transposed forms.

All these will be exhibited, with their respective Conjugations, after the Regular or Perfect Verb.

## SECTION II.

*Various Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs.*

1. In every language, the original idea of a Verb must be determinable by the relation of the subject to the object; and those various relations must be in some way or other expressible by the form of the Verb. The state of any subject of speech, or its action, is either confined to itself, or it exerts an influence on an object, or is itself the object of extraneous influence. This circumstance renders, in every language, three classes of Verbs, or three conditions of the same verb, necessary; *i.e.* neutrality (immanence), action upon other objects, and suffering. In the English Grammars, these qualities are called *Voices*; in the Semitic languages, *Conjugations*, or better, *Derivations*.

2. The ways to express these Voices are different in different languages, according to the pliability and vigour the latter possess.

The more original and vigorous a language is, we conceive, the more will it be able to derive all it requires, for the purpose of expressing the various relations of the verb, from the original verb itself, without the assistance of auxiliaries, and without circumscription: and this seems to show the superiority of the Semitic over the European Languages; because the former fully possess that power, while the latter are deficient in it.

In the English, the Passive Voice is not expressible, but by the Auxiliary *To be*. The Greek language has the power of expressing it by a change of the Active in the termination, converting  $\omega$  in *ποιαι*, &c. The Transitive is, in a few instances, formed by a change of the vowel, as "to fell" (*i.e.* make fall), from "to fall"; sometimes by Prepositions, as "to enforce," "to belabour," &c.; but, on the whole, European languages are deficient in this respect.

3. In the Semitic languages, the form of the original verb is altered, either by the mere change of vowels in the same radical consonants, or by an addition of servile letters with a suitable change of vowels, in order to express the various determinations and modifications, *i.e.* Voices or Conjugations, of which the verb is susceptible. Of these derivations, the



Hebrew Verb has seven; the Arabic, thirteen; the Ethiopic, ten different forms. For the Amharic, Ludolf has assigned but four Conjugations; but an attention to the following will show that there are many more.

4. As the Trilaterals are the most numerous and the most perfect words, we present the reader, first, with a list of all the Forms of Conjugation, to which the perfect Trilateral Verb is liable. And since all these forms do not proceed from any single stem, we take several stems together. The Verbs which will serve us for this purpose are the following:

|                                                                   |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>መለሰ:</b> <i>act.</i> he returned.                              | <b>ሰበረ:</b> he burst.       |
| <b>ከበረ:</b> he was glorious, respectable. ( <b>ደረገ:</b> non occ.) |                             |
| <b>ሰደበ:</b> he reviled.                                           | <b>አደረገ:</b> he did.        |
| <b>ነገረ:</b> he said.                                              | <b>ደነዘ:</b> was blunt.      |
| <b>መገታ:</b> he contradicted.                                      | <b>ፈተለ:</b> spun.           |
| <b>መሰለ:</b> he resembled.                                         | <b>በረቀ:</b> he fulminated.* |
| <b>ወረደ:</b> he descended.                                         |                             |

LIST OF CONJUGATIONS OF THE REGULAR AND PERFECT TRILITERAL VERB.

- I. **መለሰ:** *act.* "he returned," "repeated." **ከበረ:** *neut.* "he was respectable."
- II. **ሰደበ:** *intens.* "he scolded exceedingly."
- III. **አከበረ:** *trs.* "he honoured."
- IV. **ተመለሰ:** *pass.* "was returned." *refl.* "returned."
- V. **አደገረ:** *trs. & caus.* "he made speak," "caused to speak."
- VI. **ተደገረ:** *contin.* "he spoke." *intens.* **ተሰደበ:** "reviled," "blasphemed;" *i. q.* **ሰደበ:** **ተመከረ:** *recipr.* "he counselled," "gave and took advice."
- VII. **ተመዋገተ:** *recipr.* "he disputed."
- VIII. **አስመለሰ:** *caus.* "he caused to return."

\* These are the known forms of each of these Verbs: **መለሰ:** **ተመለሰ:** **አስመለሰ:** **ተመለሰሰ:** **ተመለሰሰ:** **ከበረ:** **አከበረ:** **አስከበረ:** **ሰደበ:** **ሰደበ:** **አሰደበ:** **ተሰደበ:** **አሰደበ:** **ተሰደበ:** **ነገረ:** **አደገረ:** **ተደገረ:** **ተደገገረ:** **ደነገረ:** **አደነገረ:** **አወሸነገረ:** **መገታ:** **ተመገታ:** **ተመዋገተ:** **መሰለ:** **ተመሰለ:** **አስመሰለ:** **አስመሰለ:** **ወረደ:** **አወረደ:** **አዋረደ:** **ተዋረደ:** **ተዋዋረደ:** **ወራረደ:** **ሰበረ:** **አሰበረ:** **ተሰበረ:** **ሰጣበረ:** **ተሰጣበረ:** (**ደረገ:**) **አደረገ:** **ተደረገ:** **አስደረገ:** **አደራረገ:** **ደነዘ:** **አደነዘ:** **ደነዘዘ:** **አደነዘዘ:** **ፈተለ:** **ተፈተለ:** **አስፈተለ:** **ፈተለተለ:** **ተፈተለተለ:** **በረቀ:** **አንጸበረቀ:**



- IX. **አስመሳለ**: *caus. & intens.* "he caused to resemble," "dissimulated," "flattered."
- X. **አስተነገረ**: *caus.* "he made speak." **አስተሰረዖ**: "procured forgiveness." **አስተነፈሰ**: *reiter.* "he inhaled and exhaled," "he respired," "breathed."
- XI. **ተዋዋረደ**: *intens., pass., & refl.* "he was completely humbled," "humbled himself completely."
- XII. **ሰባበረ**: *intens.* "broke into pieces."
- XIII. **አደራረገ**: *intens.* "he performed great things."
- XIV. **ተመለሰ**: *reiter.* "he returned repeatedly;" *i. e.* "walked." **ተመካከረ**: *recipr.* "he consulted with others," "took and gave advice."
- XV. **ተናገረ**: *reiter. & recipr.* "conversed with another," "spoke frequently."
- XVI. **ደነዘዘ**: *intens. & intrans.* "to be blunt," "stiff," "obdurate."
- XVII. **አደነዘዘ**: *trs.* "to blunt," "stiffen," "obdurate."
- XVIII. **ተመለሰ**: *refl. & pass.* "he returned," "was returned."
- XIX. **ተሸማጠጠ**: "he reviled."
- XX. **አደናገረ**: *intens.* "he talked one out of any thing," "dissuaded."
- XXI. **አወሸናገረ**: "he folded his hands."
- XXI. **ፈተተለ**: "he rubbed thin between his fingers."
- XXII. **ተፈተለ**: *pass.* "it was rubbed thin between the fingers."
- XXIII. **አንጸበረቀ**: *diminut.* "it shone," "glittered," "sparkled," "resplended."

These Forms are not of equally frequent occurrence. Those occurring most frequently, are, Nos. I. III. IV. V. VI. VIII. X. XIV. and XV. The rest are more rare.\*

5. Observations on this List:—Most of the forms it contains are analogous to the forms of derivation in the Hebrew, the Arabic, and more especially in the Ethiopic Verb; which will be evident from the following remarks:

I. **መለሰ**: comprises the Ethiopic and Arabic I. and II. forms, and the Hebrew *Kal* and *Piél*.

---

\* We beg to observe here, that, on account of the haste in which the Dictionary was prepared for press, the Forms XVI. to XXIII. were not arranged in it under their roots; as the Author was not then aware, that they were simple derivations from the Triliteral Verb. To this conviction he arrived when drawing up this Grammar.



II. **ሳደበ**: of rare occurrence, answers the Ethiopic and Arabic III. form, **ጋበረ**: and **فَاعَلَ**.

III. **አከበረ**: answers to the Ethiopic IV. and V., and to the Arabic IV.

IV. **ተመለሰ**: corresponds with the Eth. VI. and VII., and with the Arabic V.

V. **አፍገረ**: "he made speak," answers the Arabic XI.

VI. **ተፍገረ**: "he spoke," answers the Eth. VII. **ተጋበረ**: and Arabic VI. **تَفَاعَلَ**.

VII. **ተግዎዋገተ**: seldom occurs, and has no correspondent in the other languages.

VIII. IX. and X. answer the Ethiopic and Arabic X. **አስተግበረ**: **اِسْتَفْعَلَ**.

The rest are peculiar to the Amharic; although modifications of the same forms occur, especially in the Arabic.

6. Before we proceed, we notice the Conjugations of the other classes of Verbs:

#### I. TRILITERALS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL.

They are affected by the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 2. B. 3. C.

The following list contains their several conjugations:

Radices, **አመኑ**: "he believed"; and **አለፈ**: "he passed."

I. **አመኑ**: "he believed."

II. **ተመኑ**: "he was believed," "creditable," "trustworthy"; "he entrusted."

III. **አሳመኑ**: "he persuaded," "he made believe."

IV. **አስተመኑ**: "he entrusted," "accredited," "attested."

V. **ተለለፈ**: "he trespassed," "varied."

VI. **አስተለለፈ**: *recipr. & trs.* "he made pass in different ways."\*

---

\* Other Verbs of this class: **አረመ**: **አረሰ**: **አረቀ**: **አረዘ**: **አረደ**: **አረገ**: **አረጠ**: **ዐረፈ**: **አቀፈ**: **አበረ**: **አበደ**: **አበጠ**: **አተመ**: **አነሰ**: **አነቀ**: **አነጸ**: **አከለ**: **አወቀ**: **አወከ**: **አዘለ**: **አዘነ**: **አደለ**: **አደመ**: **አደረ**: **አደሰ**: **አደነ**: **አደገ**: **አደፈ**: **አገግ**: **አገዘ**: **አጠረ**: **አጸረ**: **አጠነ**: **አጪደ**: **አጸፈ**: **አጸበ**: **አፈረ**: **ዐበዩ**: **ዐረቀ**: The Dictionary shows, that the original Forms of these Verbs are not all of prima **አ**; but in the Amharic, they may be all comprised in this form.



## II. GEMINANT TRILITERALS.

They are originally Biliterals, whose second radical letter has been doubled. See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.

*List of Triliteral Geminants.*

- I. **ለቀቀ**: *intrs. & act.* "went away," "dismissed."
- II. **አረቀቀ**: *trs.* "he thinned," "rarefied."
- III. **ተለቀቀ**: *pass.* "he was dismissed"; *refl.* "he abandoned himself."
- IV. **አለቀቀ**: *intens.* "he yawned." **አሳደደ**: "he persecuted."
- V. **ተሳደደ**: *pass. int.* "he was persecuted."
- VI. **አስመረረ**: *caus.* "he embittered," "exasperated."
- VII. **አንሻተተ**: "he glided down" on his posteriors; "he cheated."
- VIII. **ተንሻተተ**: *pass.* "he was pushed down," "was cheated."
- ተንጋለለ**: "he fornicated."
- IX. **አንጠራራ**: } "stretched himself." \*
- X. **ተንጠራራ**: }

## III. GEMINANTS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL. †

- I. **አመመ**: *intrs.* "was painful"; *trs.* "gave pain."
- II. **ታመመ**: *pass.* "felt pain."
- III. **አሳመመ**: *caus.* "gave pain," "made sick."
- IV. **አስታመመ**: *sympathetic*, "nursed sick persons."

## IV. PERFECT BILITERALS. ‡

- I. **ገን**: "was beautiful." **ደገ**: "was great."
- II. **አገነ**: "beautified," "praised." **አደገ**: "he grew."
- III. **ተሰጠ**: "was given."

---

\* These Verbs are very numerous. Cf. in the Dictionary **ለቀቀ**: **ለከከ**: **ለጠጠ**: **መረረ**: **መነነ**: **መዘዘ**: **መጸጸ**: **ረቀቀ**: **ዘለለ**: **ሰለለ**: **ሰረረ**: **ሰቀቀ**: **ሰደደ**: **ሰፈፈ**: **ሸለለ**: **ሸረረ**: **ሸተተ**: **ቀለለ**: **ቀደደ**: **በረረ**: **ባነነ**: **ታለለ**: **ነበበ**: **ናዘዘ**: **ነደደ**: **ነጠጠ**: **ከረረ**: **ከሰሰ**: **ከበበ**: **ከተተ**: **ኩነነ**: **ወረረ**: **ወደደ**: **ዘፈፈ**: **ደሰሰ**: **ደቀቀ**: **ገለለ**: **ጉለለ**: **ገረረ**: **ጎተተ**: **ገደደ**: **ጉደደ**: **ገፈፈ**: **ጠመመ**: **ጠራራ**: **ጸበበ**: **ጠበበ**: **ጸለለ**: **ጸገገ**: **ፈዘዘ**:

† **አመመ**: **አለለ**: **አበበ**: **አከከ**: **አዘዘ**:

‡ **ገን**: **ደገ**: **መሸ**: **ሸሸ**: **ረ፪**: **ሰጠ**: **ሸረ**: **ሸኘ**: **ቀረ**: **ቀኘ**: **በጀ**: **በጠ**: **ተኘ**: **ነ፪**: **ጠጠ**:



- IV. **አስገዝ**: “he beautified,” “glorified.”  
 V. **አሳደገ**: “made grow,” “trained,” “educated.”  
 VI. **ገዘዘ**: “flourished.”  
 VII. **አገዘዘ**: “made to flourish.”  
 VIII. **ተሰጣጠ**: “to betray each other.”

V. IMPERFECT BILITERALS. Prima **አ**::

- I. **አየ**: “he saw.”  
 II. **ታየ**: *pass.* “was seen,” “appeared.”  
 III. **አሳየ**: *trs.* “made to see,” “showed.”  
 IV. **አስታየ**: *trs.* “made to be seen,” “brought into sight.”  
 V. **ታያየ**: *recipr.* “looked at each other,” “was over against each other.”  
 “made look at each other.”

VI. DEFECTIVE VERBS; *i.e.* Verbs which have dropped one or two Radical Letters, either in the middle or at the end.

1. Verbs with Absorbed Guttural at the end.

- I. **ገገ**: *intrs.* “he entered.” Eth. **ገበአ**:  
 II. **አገገ**: *trs.* “he introduced.”  
 III. **ተገገ**: “it was proper,” “becoming,” “it belonged.”  
 IV. **አጋገ**: *act.* “he married.”  
 V. **ተጋገ**: *pass.* “was married.”  
 VI. **አስገገ**: *caus.* “made go in,” “introduced.”  
 VII. **በቋቋ**: *intens.* “was quite sufficient.”  
 VIII. **አገገገ**: *reiter.* “used to marry,” “frequently cohabited,” “behaved properly.”  
 IX. **አጸፍፍ**: *intens.* “he comforted.”  
 X. **ተጸፍፍ**: *pass.* “was comforted.” **ተከፈፈ**: *recipr.* “quarrelled with each other.”\*

---

\* Of the same class are the following: **ገገ**: ከፈ: ገፈ: ነፈ: ጸላ: ጸራ: መራ: ነሣ: ለማ: ለካ: መላ: በላ: መታ: መጣ: ነካ: ነቃ: መፍ: መካ: ሠራ: ሰራ: ሠዋ: ረገ: ረገ: ረታ: ረካ: ረደ: ረጋ: ሰላ: ሰማ: ሠሣ: ሰገ: ሰካ: ሰፈ: ቀላ: ቀማ: ቀገ: ቀፍ: ቀደ: ቀጣ: በራ: በገ: በቃ: በካ: በዛ: በዣ: በጣ: ተላ: ተጋ: ተፈ: ነደ: ነጸ: ነጋ: አማ: ከገ: ከደ: ወቃ: ወዛ: ወራ: ወጋ: ወጣ: ዘማ: ዘራ: ዘጋ: ደፈ: ገሣ: ገራ: ገዛ: ፈራ: &c.



2. *Verbs with Absorbed Guttural in the middle.*

- I. **ማለ:** Eth. **መሐለ:** "he swore."
- II. **አማለ:** *trs.* "made swear," "administered an oath."
- III. **ተማለ:** *pass.* "was sworn."
- IV. **አስማለ:** *trs.* "made swear."
- V. **አጣጣለ:** *frequentat.* "distributed by casting lots."
- VI. **ተማማለ:** *recipr.* "mutually swore," "conspired."
- VII. **ተማለለ:** *intens.* "besought," "adjured." \*

3. *Verbs with an Absorbed P: in the middle. †*

- I. **ቬጠ:** *act.* "he sold." **ሔደ:** *neutr.* "he went."
- II. **አሔደ:** *trs.* "he made go," "drove the threshing oxen."
- III. **ተቬሔ:** *pass.* "was sold."
- IV. **ተካየጠ:** "he traded." **ተካየደ:** "made a treaty."
- V. **አስሔደ:** *caus.* "made go."

4. *Verbs with an Absorbed W: in the middle ‡.*

- I. **ቆመ:** *neut.* "he stood."
- II. **አቆመ:** *trs.* "made to stand," "erected."
- III. **ተቆመ:** *pass.* "was erected."
- IV. **ተታወመ:** *intens.* "he withstood," "resisted."
- V. **አስቀዋ:** *caus.* "he detained," "caused to wait."
- VI. **ተቋቋመ:** }
- VII. **ተቋቋመ:** } *intens.* "ultimately resisted."

5. *Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadriliterals.* They are but few in number, and only three Conjugations have been discovered §.

- I. **ለለ:** "to be loose," "lax."
- II. **አለለ:** *act.* "to loosen," "slacken."
- III. **ተጋጫ:** *intens.* "to stamp," "pound," "clapper," "to chatter."

\* See also the following Verbs: **ላሰ:** **ላቀ:** **ላከ:** **ላጠ:** **ላፈ:** **ማለ:** **ማረ:** **ማሰ:** **ፍቀ:** **ማገ:** **ማፀ:** **ሣለ:** **ራቀ:** **ራበ:** **ሳለ:** **ሳማ:** **ሳቀ:** **ሳበ:** **ሳተ:** **ሳነ:** **ኸለ:** **ኸረ:** **ኸተ:** **ቻለ:** **ፍደ:** **ካሰ:** **ካደ:** **ዋለ:** **ዋሰ:** **ዋኘ:** **ዋጠ:** **ዛገ:** **ደረ:** **ደሰ:** **ደነ:** **ጋለ:** **ጋተ:** **ጋዘ:** **ጣለ:**

† **ቬጠ:** **ሔደ:** (**ኬደ:**) **ሌለ:** **ቬነ:** **ጤሰ:** **ፈዘ:**

‡ **ሆነ:** **ሞቀ:** **ሞተ:** **ሮጠ:** **ሾመ:** **ቆመ:** **ቆየ:** **ኖረ:** **ኩረ:** **ዘረ:** **ጾመ:**

§ **ለለ:** **ራራ:** **ሳሳ:** **ባባ:** **ዋጀ:**



6. *Verbs doubly imperfect.*

(a) Beginning with an **አ**: and having an Absorbed Guttural at the end. There are but few (**አዖ**: and **አለ**: not being included): **አጣ**: **አማ**: **አጫ**::

- I. **አጣ**: *negat.* "to want."
- II. **ተጣ**: *neg. pass.* "to be wanted."
- III. **አሳጣ**: *caus.* "to deprive."

(b) *Beginning with* **ዖ**: *which absorbs a Guttural.*

- I. **ዖዘ**: *Eth.* **አገዝ**:: *act.* "to seize."
- II. **አዖዘ**: *trs.* "caused another to seize."
- III. **ተዖዘ**: *pass.* "was seized."
- IV. **አስዖዘ**: *caus.* "caused to seize," "betrayed."
- V. **ተዖዖዘ**: *pass. frequentat. & recipr.* "was frequently or alternately seized," "seized frequently," "completely," or "reciprocally."

(c) *Various forms of the Verb* **አለ**: "*To say.*"

Not to be confounded with the Auxiliary **አለ**: "*To be.*" Its forms are partly derived from **አለ**:, partly from **በህለ**: *Eth.*

- I. **አለ**: "he said."
- II. **አበለ**: "to deceive by talking."
- III. **ተገለ**: "to be said," "called."
- IV. **ተበለ**: "to be deceived."
- V. **ተገለ**: "to rumour in public."
- VI. **ተገበለ**: }
- VII. **ተገገለ**: } *recipr.* "to say to each other."
- VIII. **አገበለ**: "he persuaded."
- IX. **ተለለ**: "he was talked into any thing," "was persuaded."
- X. **አተለለ**: "he persuaded," "cheated by talking."

(d) Conjugation of the Verb **ተወ**:: and **መጣ**::

## VII. VARIOUS CONJUGATIONS OF QUADRILITERAL AND PLURILITERAL VERBS.

1. *Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.*

Stems: **ለመለመ**: "to be green." **ለቀለቀ**: "to bedaub." **ነቀነቀ**: "to shake." **በደበደ**: "to cudgel." **ቀሰቀሰ**: "to excavate." **ቀጠቀጠ**: "to bruise." (**ከፈከፈ**::)

- I. **ለመለመ**: *neut.* "it was green," "fresh."
- II. **አለመለመ**: *trs.* "he made green," "verdant," "refreshed."



- III. **ተለቀለቀ**: *pass.* "he was bedaubed."
- IV. **አነቃነቃ**: *act. intens.* "he shook."
- V. **ተለቃለቃ**: *refl.* "bedaubed," "washed himself."
- VI. **አስለቀለቀ**: *caus.* "he caused bedaubing."
- VII. **አንበደበደ**: *act.* "beat," "shook."
- VIII. **ተንቀጠቀጠ**: *pass. & neutr.* "trembled."
- IX. **አንቀሳቀሰ**: *act.* "he stirred," "moved."
- X. **ተንቀሳቀሰ**: *pass. & neutr.* "was moved," "moved."
- XI. **አሳንቀሳቀሰ**: *trs.* "he moved."\*

2. *Derivates from Triliterals having one Radical doubled and transposed.*

- I. **ደሎደሞ**: *neut.* "it was blunt."
- II. **አደሎደሞ**: *trs.* "he blunted."
- III. **ተደሎደሞ**: *pass.* "was blunted."
- IV. **አከኖወኑ**: *trs.* "he gave success."
- V. **ተከኖወኑ**: *neut.* "he succeeded," "prospered."
- VI. **አንገረገበ**: *neutr.* "it became knotty."

But few verbs belong to this class.

3. *Geminants.*

We rank under this class only such forms as cannot, with our present knowledge of the language, be considered to belong to Form XVI. of the regular Triliteral Verb. This class is but small:

- I. **ኩበለለ**: *intrans.* "he fled," "escaped."
- II. **ተደመሰሰ**: *pass.* "was destroyed."

---

\* The Verbs of this class are very numerous. The following do belong to them:

**መረመረ: መነመነ: ረበረበ: ሰበሰበ: ቀለቀለ: ቀረቀረ: ቀሰቀሰ:**  
**በረበረ: በሰበሰ: ጠመጠመ: ጉበጉበ: በዘበዘ: በጠበጠ: ተረተረ:**  
**ጠቀጠቀ: ጉነጉነ: ተበተበ: ተከተከ: ጠረጠረ: ተፈተፈ: ጠበጠበ:**  
**ገዘገዘ: ጠፈጠፈ: ጉደጉደ: ነሰነሰ: ነዘነዘ: ገለገለ: ከለከለ:**  
**ጠለጠለ: ከረከረ: ኩረኩረ: ኩደኩደ: ወለወለ: ወዘወዘ:**  
**ጨመጨመ: ጨበጨበ: ጦሎጦሎ: ወረወረ: ዘበዘበ: ዘፈዘፈ:**  
**ደለደለ: ደረደረ: ደበደበ: ጨፈጨፈ: ደፈደፈ: ደነደነ: ጀፈጀፈ: ገመ**  
**ገመ: ጉረጉረ: ገሰገሰ: ፈለፈለ: ፈረፈረ: ፈገፈገ: And the Augmented Forms:**  
**አሸከረከረ: (for አስከረከረ:) ተቆበዘበዘ:**



- III. **ተጎማለለ**: *neutr.* "walked nimbly," "affectedly," "proudly."
- IV. **አስጠነቀቀ**: *trs.* "he warned," "cautioned."
- V. **አንከባለለ**: *act.* "he rolled about."
- VI. **ተንከባለለ**: *pass.* "was rolled about."

#### 4. *Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals.*

- I. **መሰገነ**: *neutr.* "was glorious."
- II. **አመሰገነ**: *trs.* "he glorified."
- III. **ተመሰገነ**: *pass.* "he was glorified."
- IV. **አሰፈበተ**: *intens.* "he dismissed."
- V. **ተሰፈበተ**: *pass.* "he was dismissed," "took his leave."
- VI. **አስመሰገነ**: *caus.* "he caused to glorify."
- VII. **ገለገበጠ**: *intens.* "he overthrew completely."
- VIII. **ተገለገበጠ**: *pass. intens.* "he was completely overthrown."
- IX. **ተሰፈገበተ**: *recipr. & reiter.* "took leave from each other." \*

### SECTION III.

#### *On the Flexion of Verbs.*

The Flexion of Verbs treats on their *Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.*

#### 1. *Moods of the Amharic Verb.*

The Amharic Verb has Seven Moods: (a) the *Indicative*; (b) the *Contingent*; (c) the *Subjunctive*; (d) the *Constructive*; (e) the *Imperative*; (f) the *Infinitive*; (g) the *Participle*.

---

\* 1. This class is most numerous, and comprises a great variety of Verbs, as the following List will show: **መረኮዘ**: **መሰከረ**: **መሰከወ**: **መነኩሰ**: **መነዘሀ**: **ሰበቀለ**: **ሰነከለ**: **ሰነዘረ**: **ሰነገለ**: **ሰነጠቀ**: **ሸመገለ**: **ሸነከረ**: **ሸነገለ**: **ቀለበሰ**: **ቀለወጠ**: **ቀለጠፈ**: **ቀመጠለ**: **ቀረጠመ**: **ቀገጠረ**: **በረከተ**: **ተረጉመ**: **ተነኩለ**: **ተነከረ**: **አመለከ**: **አነከሰ**: **አነጠሰ**: **ወነጀለ**: **(ወነገለ)**: **ዘነበለ**: **ዘነጉረ**: **ደነቆረ**: **ደነገዘ**: **ደነገጠ**: **ጉለመሰ**: **ጉነቀለ**: **ጉነበሰ**: **ጉነጀለ**: **ጉነጸፈ**: **ጠረቀመ**: **ጠፍወተ**: **ጨነገፈ**: **ጸወለገ**: **ፈነተረ**: **ፈነቀለ**::

2. Most of the forms comprised in this List are Derivative; either from Nouns, as **መሰከረ**: **መነኩሰ**: **ተነከረ**: **በረከተ**: or, as most of the rest, from Triliteral Verbs. The use of the liquid **ከ** in this amplification of forms, is remarkable; e.g. **አነጠሰ**: is from the Arabic عَطَسَ, **ሰነበተ**: from the Hebrew נָבַח, **ሰነጠቀ**: from the Eth. ሰጠቀ:: **ሰነዘረ**: from the Eth. ሰዘረ: &c.



A. The *Indicative* Mood has nothing particular. It has two Tenses, the Preterite and the Present (or Future); besides which, other Tenses are formed by the Contingent and the Constructive, in connexion with Auxiliaries.

B. The *Contingent* is the simple verbal form with the Personal Preformatives and Terminations, and serves for the Indicative as well as for the Subjunctive, according as it is either, (1) Simple; or (2) has Conjunctions prefixed, and what the nature of those Conjunctions is; or (3) whether any, and what sort of Auxiliary, is attached to it. (See pp. 66, 67.)

C. The *Conjunctive* or *Subjunctive* Mood is not used in the Amharic, except for the purpose of expressing a desire, or request, or obligation. Its peculiarity consists in its Radicals, after the prefixion of the Personal Serviles, assuming the form of the Imperative. (See pp. 68, 69.)

D. A curious Mood, and peculiar to the Amharic and Tigrê languages, having its beginning undeveloped in the Ethiopic Infinitive, is the *Constructive*. It is formed by the simple root of the verb with Personal Afformatives; and has four forms; one simple, one augmented, and two compound forms. (See pp. 70, 71.)

E. The form of the *Imperative* (its nature being the same as in other languages) is short. (See p. 71.)

F. The *Infinitive*, or Verbal Substantive, is formed by the prefixion of **ፊ** to the Simple Form.

G. The *Participle* presents five; viz. three Simple, and two Compound Forms. The three former, partaking of a nominal character, have been exhibited in the Table of Derivative Nouns: the two latter are formed by the Finite Verb Preterite and Contingent, to which certain Preformatives are prefixed; and they retain their flexibility, *i.e.* capability of being conjugated. Besides this, they are all declinable. (See pp. 72, 73.)

We come now to speak,

## II. *Of the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.*

They are not so exactly distinguished in the Amharic as in our European Languages: in fact, the Abyssinians have not, strictly speaking, more than two divisions of time; *i.e.* the *Past* and the *Present*; the *Present* being used also for the *Future*. The *Past* is subdivided into the *Perfect*, and *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*; the *Perfect* being rendered by the simple Preterite form, and the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*, (which are not distinguished from each other) being composed either of the Contingent or the Simple Constructive, with the Preterite Auxiliary **ነበረ**:: The *Present*, which might be, perhaps with propriety, called *Aorist*, because it is appli-



cable to the Future as well as to the Present Tense, is a form composed of the Contingent and the Auxiliary **ከሰ::** In order to distinguish the Future from the Present, where the context is not in itself clear enough, certain phrases are adopted which leave no doubt that the time is yet to come in which the action &c. of the subject is to take place. But more of this afterwards. (See p. 66.)

3. The *Number* of Conjugation is but twofold, Singular and Plural.

4. *The Persons.*

There are, in reality, not more than *three* for each Number; viz. the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person spoken of; but the grammatical forms are more, as has been shown under the article of Pronouns, Chap. III.; namely, seven forms for the Singular, and three for the Plural. Now the Semitic Languages have this in common, that the personal distinctions in the Conjugations of Verbs are expressed by certain letters affixed or prefixed, or both, to the Radicals of the Verb; and in so doing, the act of Conjugation is accomplished. We call the prefixed letters *Preformatives*, and the affixed ones *Afformatives*. The following List exhibits them.

(a) *Preformatives.*

| SINGULAR.      |            | PLURAL.      |             |
|----------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
|                |            | Com. Gender. |             |
| 3d pers. masc. | <b>ይ—:</b> | 3.           | <b>ይ—:</b>  |
| .. .. fem.     | <b>ት—:</b> |              |             |
| 2d .. m. & f.  | <b>ት—:</b> | 2.           | <b>ት—:</b>  |
| .. .. hon. 1.  | <b>ይ—:</b> |              |             |
| .. .. .. 2.    | <b>ት—:</b> |              |             |
| 1st .. com.    | <b>ከ—:</b> | 1.           | <b>ከከ—:</b> |

(b) *Afformatives.*

| SINGULAR.                    |                   |                     | PLURAL. |                     |                   |                    |                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Pret.                        | Pres. Subj.       | Constr.             | Com.    | Pret.               | Pres.             | Subj.              | Constr.             |
| 3. masc. none.               | none.             | —o.                 | 3.      | — <sup>3</sup> ሀ,   | — <sup>3</sup> ሀ, | — <sup>3</sup> ሀ,  | — <sup>3</sup> ሐ:   |
| .. fem. —ት:                  | .. ..             | —ā.                 |         |                     |                   |                    |                     |
| 2. masc. —ሀ:                 | .. ..             | — <sup>3</sup> ሀ:   | 2.      | — <sup>3</sup> ሐትሀ: | — <sup>3</sup> ሀ, | — <sup>3</sup> ሀ,  | — <sup>3</sup> ሐትሀ: |
| .. fem. —ከ:                  | .. ፤              | — <sup>3</sup> ከ:   |         |                     |                   |                    |                     |
| .. hon. 1. — <sup>3</sup> ሀ  | .. <sup>3</sup> ሀ | — <sup>3</sup> ሐ:   |         |                     |                   |                    |                     |
| .. .. 2. — <sup>3</sup> ሐትሀ: | .. <sup>3</sup> ሀ | — <sup>3</sup> ሐትሀ: |         |                     |                   |                    |                     |
| 1. com. —ሀ:                  | .. ..             | —ê.                 | 1.      | —ከ:                 | none              | — <sup>3</sup> ከ:: |                     |

What hitherto has been said, may suffice for the preliminaries: we therefore now proceed to the *Conjugation of the Verbs*.



## SECTION IV.

*Conjugation of Verbs.*

Before we enter upon the conjugation of the *Regular Verb*, we give the conjugation of the two *Auxiliary Verbs*:

**አለ:** he is.      **ነበረ:** he was;

and of the Irregular and Defective Verb Substantive, **ነው:** "he is."

A. **አለ:** Eth. **ሀለወ:** contr. **ሀሎ:** "he is," "there is" (French, *il y a*), is used only in the Present; but that has a Preterite form.

| SINGULAR.     |                   |                       |         | PLURAL.           |                              |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------|------------------------------|
|               | Masc.             | Fem.                  | Common. | Common.           |                              |
| 3d pers.      | <b>አለ:</b> he is. | <b>አለች:</b> she is.   |         | <b>አሉ:</b>        | { they are,<br>he (hon.) is. |
| 2d ..         | <b>አለህ:</b>       | <b>አለሽ:</b> thou art. |         | <b>አላችሁ:</b>      | you are.                     |
| .. .. hon. 1. | .                 | .                     | .       | <b>አሉ:</b>        | } you<br>are.                |
| .. .. 2.      | .                 | .                     | .       | <b>አላችሁ:</b>      |                              |
| 1st ..        | .                 | .                     | .       | <b>አለሁ:</b> I am. | <b>አለን:</b> we are.          |

NOTE 1. — This verb is not to be confounded with the Irregular Verb **አለ:** "he said"; which will be given, when we treat of the Irregular Verbs in general.

2. The 3d pers. sing. and plur., combined with Suffixed Pronouns, have the same signification as "*est*" and "*sunt*" in the Latin, with the Dative of the Personal Pronoun; *e.g.* *Mihi est*, "I have." So in the Amharic,

**-በር: አለኝ:** I have (possess) money.

**ልጆች: አሉት:** he has (possesses) children.

3. As Auxiliary, the 3d pers. sing. masc. is changed into **አለ:** *e.g.*

**ይላል:** for **ይል: አለ:** he says.

**ተቀምጥዋል:** for **ተቀምጦ: አለ:** he is sitting.

B. **ነበረ:** "he was," is used as Auxiliary for the Past Tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive. It has only the Preterite.

| SINGULAR.  |                                   |                              |      | PLURAL.             |                       |
|------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|------|---------------------|-----------------------|
|            | Masc.                             | Fem.                         | Com. | Common.             |                       |
| 3.         | <b>ነበረ:</b> } he<br>(ነበር:) } was. | <b>ነበረች:</b> she was.        |      | <b>ነበሩ:</b>         | they were.            |
| 2.         | <b>ነበርህ:</b>                      | <b>ነበርሽ:</b> { thou<br>wast. |      | <b>ነበሩችሁ:</b>       | { you<br>were.        |
| .. hon. 1. | .                                 | .                            | .    | <b>ነበሩ:</b>         | you were.             |
| .. .. 2.   | .                                 | .                            | .    | <b>ነበሩችሁ:</b>       | { you<br>were.        |
| 1.         | .                                 | .                            | .    | <b>ነበርሁ:</b> I was. | <b>ነበርን:</b> we were. |



NOTE.—When used as an Auxiliary, **ነበር**: serves often for any person Singular or Plural; *e.g.*

**ተቀምጠው**: **ነበር**: they were sitting.

**ትመጣ**: **ነበር**: thou wouldst come.

### C. **ነው**: *He is.*

This verb is singularly anomalous. It consists of merely one radical letter **ነ**:, to which the Verbal Suffixes are attached, instead of Personal Affirmatives. Is used only in one form, which we may call the Preterite of the Indicative, because it resembles that more than any other form.

| SINGULAR. |                 |               |           | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
|           | Masc.           | Fem.          | Com.      | Common.       |
| 3d pers.  | ነው: he is.      | ናች: she is.   |           | ናችው: they are |
| 2d pers.  | ነህ: thou art.   | ነሽ: thou art. |           | ናችሁ: you are  |
| .. ..     | hon. 1. . . . . |               | ናችሁ: }    | } you are.    |
| .. ..     | .. 2. . . . .   |               | ነው: }     |               |
| 1st pers. | . . . . .       |               | ነኝ: I am. | ነኝ: we are.   |

This is the regular form of this anomalous verb. Deviations are these: **ነዋ**:, for the 3d pers. sing. masc. interrogative, "Is he?" In the Shoa Dialect, **ነወደ**: for the regular **ነውን**: *e.g.*

**አንደት**: **ነዋ**: How is it? for **አንደት**: **ነው**::

A second deviation is **ነች**:, in the Shoa Dialect, "She is," for **ናች**::

## 1. *Conjugation of the Perfect and Triliteral Verbs.*

### A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple form **ከበረ**: neut. "He was honourable." **መለሰ**: act. "he turned." intrs. "he answered." **ሰደበ**: trs. "he scolded," "blasphemed."

#### (a) *Indicative Mood.*

##### α. PRETERITE.

| SINGULAR. |                                |                                    |                                         |  |
|-----------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--|
|           | Masc.                          | Fem.                               | Com.                                    |  |
| 3d pers.  | ከበረ: { he was ho-<br>nourable. | ከበረች: { she was ho-<br>nourable.   |                                         |  |
| 2d ..     | ከበርህ:                          | ከበርሽ: { thou wast ho-<br>nourable. |                                         |  |
| .. hon.1. | . . . . .                      |                                    | ከበረ: } you were<br>ከበረችሁ: } honourable. |  |
| .. .. 2.  | . . . . .                      |                                    |                                         |  |
| 1.        | . . . . .                      |                                    | ከበርሁ: I was honourable.                 |  |
| Common.   |                                |                                    | PLURAL.                                 |  |
| 3d pers.  | ከበረ: they were honourable.     |                                    |                                         |  |
| 2d ..     | ከበረችሁ: you were honourable.    |                                    |                                         |  |
| 1st ..    | ከበርን: we were honourable.      |                                    |                                         |  |



## β. PRESENT AND FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

| Masc.      |         | Fem.                                                              |                                                                      | Common.                                                            |
|------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3d p.      | ይከብራል፡  | <div> <div>he is,</div> <div>will be</div> <div>hon.</div> </div> | ትከብራለች፡                                                              | <div> <div>she is,</div> <div>will be</div> <div>hon.</div> </div> |
| 2.         | ትከብራለህ፡ | ትከብርያለሽ፡                                                          | <div> <div>thou art,</div> <div>wilt be</div> <div>hon.</div> </div> |                                                                    |
| .. hon. 1. | .       | .                                                                 | .                                                                    | ይከብራሉ፡                                                             |
| .. .. 2.   | .       | .                                                                 | .                                                                    | ትከብራለችሁ፡                                                           |
| 1.         | .       | .                                                                 | .                                                                    | እከብራለሁ፡                                                            |

{ you are,  
 or will  
 be hon.

{ I am,  
 shall be  
 hon.

## PLURAL.

## Common.

3d pers. ይከብራሉ፡ they are, will be honourable.

2d .. ትከብራለችሁ፡ you are, will be honourable.

1st .. እንከብራለን፡ we are, shall be honourable.

NOTE 1.—Whether this form, when it occurs, is intended for the Present or for the Future Tense, generally depends on the context. In order, however, to leave no doubt when they speak of future things, they use the simple contingent form with additional particles; *e.g.* እከብር፡ ዘንድ፡ አለኝ፡ “I have (am) to be honourable.” እከብር፡ ዘንድ፡ ጊዜ፡ አለኝ፡ “time is for me (to come) that I am to be honourable,” &c.

2. Personal Suffixes, and sometimes the Conjunction ም፡, are infixed between the Simple Form and the Auxiliary.

## (b.) CONTINGENT.

## α. Simple.

| SINGULAR.  |       |       |         | PLURAL. |
|------------|-------|-------|---------|---------|
|            | Masc. | Fem.  | Common. | Common. |
| 3d pers.   | ይከብር፡ | ትከብር፡ |         | ይከብሩ፡   |
| 2d ..      | ትከብር፡ | ትከብሪ፡ |         | ትከብሩ፡   |
| .. hon. 1. | .     | .     | ይከብሩ፡   |         |
| .. .. 2.   | .     | .     | ትከብሩ፡   |         |
| 1st pers.  | .     | .     | እከብር፡   | እንከብር፡  |

As this form is used for both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, as well as for the formation of Participles, we have given no translation of it; but shall present a few instances here, to illustrate its use:



**ይከብር፡ ዘንድ፡** in order that he may be honourable.

**ሊከብር፡** that he may be honourable.

**እንደከብር፡** that he is honourable.

**ቢከብር፡** or **ይከብር፡ እንደሆን፡** if he is (be) honourable.

**ከከብር፡** than that he should be honourable.

**ሲከብር፡** while he is honourable.

**የሚከብር፡** he that is honourable.

**አይከብርም፡** he is not honourable.

The Present and Future of the Indicative, also, is a composition of the Contingent with the Auxiliary **አለ፡** which is omitted whenever the word receives any augmentation at the beginning or at the end, except Suffixes or Copulative Conjunctions.

β. COMPOUND.

SINGULAR.

Masc.

Fem.

Common.

p. **ይከብር፡ ነበር፡** { he was,  
had been  
hon.      **ትከብር፡ ነበረች፡** { she was,  
had been  
hon.

**ትከብር፡ ነበርህ፡**      **ትከብረ፡ ነበርሽ፡** { thou wast,  
hadst been  
hon.

hon. 1. . . . . **ይከብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡** { you were,  
.. 2. . . . . **ትከብሩ፡ ነበሩችሁ፡** { had been  
hon.

. . . . . **እከብር፡ ነበርሁ፡** { I was,  
had been  
hon.

PLURAL.

Common.

3d pers. **ይከብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡** they were, or had been honourable.

2d . . . **ትከብሩችሁ፡ ነበሩችሁ፡** you were, or had been honourable.

1st . . **እንከብር፡ ነበርን፡** we were, or had been honourable.

This form is used for the Subjunctive, as well as for the Indicative.

(c) *Subjunctive Mood.*

Is characterized by having the form of the Imperative Mood with the Personal Preformatives.



| SINGULAR. |                                   |                                          |                                          |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
|           | Masc.                             | Fem.                                     | Com.                                     |
| 3d pers.  | <b>ይክበር:</b> { let him<br>be hon. | <b>ትክበር:</b> { let her<br>be hon.        |                                          |
| 2. ..     | <b>ትክበር:</b>                      | <b>ትክበረ:</b> { mayest<br>thou<br>be hon. |                                          |
| ..        | hon. 1. . . . .                   |                                          | <b>ይክበሩ:</b> { may you                   |
| .. ..     | 2. . . . .                        |                                          | <b>ትክበሩ:</b> { be hon.                   |
| 1. ..     | . . . . .                         |                                          | <b>ኧክበር:</b> { let me, may<br>I, be hon. |
| PLURAL.   |                                   |                                          |                                          |
| Common.   |                                   |                                          |                                          |

3d pers. **ይክበሩ:** may they, let them be honourable.

2. .. **ትክበሩ:** may you be honourable.

1. .. **ኧክበር:** may we, let us be honourable.

NOTE 1.—As the Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, always expressing a wish, a request, or indirect command, it is natural that the Second Person Singular, in its direct form, and the same person in the Plural, is less frequently used than the remaining forms; for they use more generally the Imperative.

2. Several verbs are destitute of this form, and they use the Simple Contingent. It may therefore be of service to the Student, to give a list of those verbs of this class which have this form; and another of those which have not.

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

**ለመጠ: ለቀጠ: ለበሰ: ለበጠ: ለገመ:**  
**ለገሰ: ለገደ: ለገጠ: መለከ: መለጠ:**  
**መረገ: መረጠ: መሰለ: መከረ: መከነ:**  
**መጠነ: ሠለጠ: ሠመረ: ሠረቀ: ሠረፀ:**  
**ሠቀዩ: ሠጠመ: ረከሰ: ረከሰ: ረከዛ:**  
**ረዘመ: ረገመ: ረገጠ: ረገፈ: ረጠበ: ረፈደ:**  
**ረፈቀ: ሰለበ: ሰማራ: ሰረቀ: ሰረዩ:**  
**ሰረፈ: ሰቀለ: ሰበረ: ሰበቀ: ሰበከ:**  
**ሰከረ: ሰደበ: ሰገደ: ሰፈረ: ሸመቀ:**  
**ሸመነ: ሸከረ: ሸከረ: ሸገተ: ሸፈጠ:**  
**ቀለጠ: ቀመሰ: ቀሠጠ: ቀሠፈ: ቀረሰ:**  
**ቀረበ: ቀረበ: ቀረጠ: ቀረጠ: ቀረፈ:**

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

**ለመነ: ለመደ: ለሰነ:**  
**ለቀመ: ለወሰ: ለወጠ:**  
**ለዘበ: ለጉመ: መለሰ:**  
**መረቀ: መረዘ: ፍከረ:**  
**መዘነ: መገለ: መገበ:**  
**መጉተ: ሰነጋ: ሰነፈ:**  
**ሰወረ: ሸለመ: ሸመተ:**  
**ሸሸገ: ሸቀበ: ሸጉረ:**  
**ሸፈነ: ቀለመ: ቀለበ:**  
**ቀለፈ: ቀቀለ: ቀደሰ:**  
**ቀራረ: በረታ: በቀለ:**  
**በቀለ: በደለ: በደረ:**



## VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

ቀሰለ: ቀበረ: ቀዘነ: ቀዘፈ: ቀደመ:  
 ቀጠለ: ቀጠረ: ቀጠረ: ቀጠነ: በለጠ:  
 በረቀ: በረደ: በሰለ: በቀለ: (grow) በተነ:  
 በጠሰ: ተመሰ: ተረዘ: ተረፈ: ተከለ:  
 ነቀለ: ነቀሰ: ነቀዘ: ነቀፈ: ነከረ: ነከሰ:  
 ነደለ: ነደቀ: ነደፈ: ነገረ: ነገሠ: ነገደ: ነጠረ:  
 ነጠቀ: ነጸረ: ነጸፈ: ነፈሰ: ነፈቀ: ነፈገ:  
 ከመረ: ከረመ: ከበረ: ከበደ: ከደነ:  
 ከፈለ: ከፈተ: ከፈነ: ወለሰ: ወለደ:  
 ወረሰ: ወረደ: ወሰነ: ወሰደ: ወቀረ:  
 ወቀጠ: ወከለ: ወደሰ: ወደቀ: ወገረ:  
 ወገዘ: ዘለቀ: ዘመረ: ዘመደ: ዘረፈ:  
 ዘከረ: ዘገመ: ዘገነ: ዘገዞ: ዘፈረ: ደረሰ:  
 ደረቀ: ደበቀ: ደነዘ: ደነፈ: ደከመ: ደገመ:  
 ደፈነ: ገለጠ: ገመረ: ገመደ: ገረመ: ጉረሰ:  
 ገረፈ: ገበረ: ገበዘ: ጉበጠ: ገተረ: ጉተነ:  
 ገነኘ: ገነዘ: ገዘረ: ገዘተ: ገደለ: ጉደለ:  
 ገደመ: ገደረ: ገደፈ: ገጠመ: ገጸበ: ጠለቀ:  
 ጠለፈ: ጠመቀ: ጠረቀ: ጠቀመ: ጠቀሰ:  
 ጸደቀ: ጸደፈ: ፈለቀ: ፈለጠ: ፈረሰ: ፈረደ:  
 ፈቀደ: ፈተለ: ፈተነ: ፈተገ: ፈጠረ: ፈጠነ:  
 ፈጸመ::

## VERBS WITHOUT IT.

ተከሰ: ተከዘ: ቸከለ:  
 ቸገረ: ነወረ: ነወጠ:  
 ወቀሰ: ወገደ: ወፈረ:  
 ዘለፈ: ዘረገ: ዘነመ:  
 ዘነገ: ዛፈነ: ደመቀ:  
 ደረበ: ደቀሰ: ደነቀ:  
 ደወለ: ደጉሰ: ደገፈ:  
 ደፈረ: ደፈቀ: ጀመረ:  
 ገመሰ: ገሠጸ: ጉበኘ:  
 ገገረ: ጠረሰ: ጠቀረ:  
 ጠበሰ: ጠበቀ: ጠዋቀ:  
 ጠገነ: ጨለመ: ጨለጠ:  
 ጨመረ: ጨመተ: ጨረሰ:  
 ጨበጠ: ጨነቀ: ጨከነ:  
 ጨፈረ: ጨፈነ: ጸመደ:  
 ጸረበ: ጸረገ: ጸዋፈ: ጸገበ:  
 ፀነሰ: ፈለሰ: ፈለገ:  
 ፈወሰ::

3. In verbs whose first radical has a diphthong, the latter is shortened into that diphthong which answers the sixth vowel order; *e.g.* **ደቀረጥ:** “let him cut,” from **ቀረጠ:** **አትጉደል:** “do not be deficient.”

4. The Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, that it yields all its forms to serve the latter, where that is deficient. So in the negative orders, prohibitions or warnings, where the Imperative cannot be used for having no Servile Preformatives; *e.g.*

**አትንገር:** do not tell.

**አትወደቅ:** do not fall.

**አትግደል:** do not kill.

**አትቀረጥ:** do not cut.

(d) *Constructive Mood.*

This is a singular Mood, which has nothing corresponding, either in our European or in the other Semitic Languages; although its form, as



far as the Simple one is concerned, answers the Ethiopic Infinitives **ገብር**: and **ገብር**:; but this Mood is not an Infinitive. It has nothing of a Substantive character; whereas the Infinitive is the first Verbal Substantive, possessing both the characters of Substantive and Verb. Nor is there any other Mood to which it exactly corresponds: neither Participle nor Gerund, nor Finite Verb, will answer it; although it may be occasionally translated by either, and sometimes by an Adverb. It occupies an intermediate station between the Infinitive and the Finite Verb; has four forms, one of which is Simple, one Augmented, and two Compound; and is flexible, like the Finite Verb, having Afformatives resembling the Suffixed Pronouns, partly of the Noun, and partly of the Verb. The Simple form is used for amplifying; the other forms, on account of the auxiliaries which are attached to them, for constituting sentences. When the nature of this Mood is understood, we hope the designation *Constructive* will be justified; not having been able to fix upon any better.

The Simple form **ከብር**: (a modification of the radix **ከብር**: “honour”), which may be considered as containing the idea of an agent, and of an action, or a concrete being, and an abstract state or condition, &c., assumes peculiar forms of Pronouns; which must not be taken as Possessive (Nominal), but as Personal (Verbal); nor as the other Verbal Suffixes which are in the Accusative; but they are Nominatives. Here it is:

α. FIRST FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

| <i>Simple Form.</i>                   |                                     |                           |  |  |                    |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|--------------------|
| SINGULAR.                             |                                     |                           |  |  | PLURAL.            |
| Masc.                                 | Fem.                                | Com                       |  |  | Com.               |
| 3d p. <b>ከብር</b> : { he being<br>hon. | <b>ከብረ</b> : she being honourable.  |                           |  |  | <b>ከብረው</b> : they |
| 2. <b>ከብረህ</b> :                      | <b>ከብረሽ</b> : thou being honourable |                           |  |  | <b>ከብረችሁ</b> : you |
| .. hon. 1. . . . .                    |                                     | <b>ከብረው</b> : { you be-   |  |  | <b>ከብረን</b> : we   |
| ... .. 2. . . . .                     |                                     | <b>ከብረችሁ</b> : { ing hon. |  |  |                    |
| 1. . . . .                            |                                     | <b>ከብረ</b> : I being hon. |  |  |                    |

being honourable.

The Augmented form has become Finite by the Auxiliary **ከለ**: being attached to the Simple form; but not in the same manner as it attaches itself to the Contingent, in constituting the Present and Future Tense. It serves for the Past and the Present Tenses.



## β. SECOND OR AUGMENTED FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

*Constructive Aorist (Present and Perfect).*

| SINGULAR.                            |                             |                                            | PLURAL.                    |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Masc.                                | Fem.                        | Com.                                       | Com.                       |
| 3. ከብርዋል: { he is<br>(was)<br>hon. } | ከብራልች: she is (was) hon.    |                                            | ከብረዋል: they                |
| 2. ከብረሃል:                            | ከብረኸል: thou art (wast) hon. |                                            | ከብራችኋል: you                |
| .. hon. 1. . . . .                   |                             | ከብረዋል: { you<br>were                       | } are, or were honourable. |
| .. .. 2. . . . .                     |                             | ከብራችኋል: { hon.                             |                            |
| 1. . . . .                           |                             | { ከብርዖሁ:<br>for ከብረ:<br>ክላሁ: I am (was) h. |                            |

## γ. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTIVE FORMS.

N *Constructive Perfect.*

| SINGULAR.                                               |                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Masc.                                                   | Fem.                                                                    |
| 3. { ከብር: { he was,<br>ክብር: { or had<br>been hon. }     | ከብራ: { she was, or<br>ክብረች: { had been<br>hon. }                        |
| 2. { ከብረህ: { thou wast,<br>ክብርህ: { hadst been<br>hon. } | ከብረኸ: { thou wast,<br>ክብርኸ: { hadst been<br>hon. }                      |
| .. hon. 1. . . . .                                      | Common.<br>ከብረወ: ክብረ: { you were,<br>ከብራችሁ: ክብረችሁ: { had been<br>hon. } |
| 1. . . . .                                              | ከብረ: ክብርሁ: I was, had been h.                                           |
| PLURAL.                                                 |                                                                         |
| Common.                                                 |                                                                         |
| 3d pers. ከብረው: ክብሩ: they                                | } were, or had been honourable.                                         |
| 2d .. ከብራችሁ: ክብራችሁ: you                                 |                                                                         |
| 1st .. ከብረን: ክብርን: we                                   |                                                                         |

This form is used merely for the Indicative. Observe, also, that ክብር: may be used throughout, without any change, as remarked in the Note to the conjugation of ክብረ: p. 65.



2. *Constructive Form of Uncertainty.*

## SINGULAR.

|           |                |               |                           |
|-----------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| 3d masc.  | ከብር፡ ይሆናል፡     | he may        | } probably be honourable. |
| .. fem.   | ከብረ፡ ትሆናለች፡    | she may       |                           |
| 2d masc.  | ከብረህ፡ ትሆናለህ፡   | } thou mayest |                           |
| .. fem.   | ከብረሽ፡ ትሆናለሽ፡   |               |                           |
| .. hon.1. | ከብረው፡ ይሆናሉ፡    | } you may     |                           |
| .. .. 2.  | ከብረችሁ፡ ትሆናለችሁ፡ |               |                           |
| 1st com.  | ከብረ፡ እሆናለሁ፡    | I may         |                           |

## PLURAL.

|          |                |      |                      |
|----------|----------------|------|----------------------|
| 3d masc. | ከብረው፡ ይሆናሉ፡    | they | } may be honourable. |
| 2d ..    | ከብረችሁ፡ ትሆናለችሁ፡ | you  |                      |
| 1st com. | ከብረን፡ እንሆናለን፡  | we   |                      |

(e) *Imperative.*

The Imperative has two forms; one which has the first Radical in the sixth, and the second in the first order; and another which has the first Radical in the first, and the second in the sixth order. All those verbs which have the Subjunctive form, have the Imperative in the first; and the rest have it in the second form. As a specimen of the first, we take the Imperative of ከበረ፡; and of the other, that of ጠበቁ፡. It is used only in the Second Person Singular and Plural.

α. *Form ህህህ፡*

## SINGULAR.

Masc. ከበረ፡ } be honourable.  
Fem. ከበረ፡ }

## PLURAL.

Com. ከበረ፡ be honourable.

Diphthong form: ቀ፡ጠረ፡ ቀ፡ጠረ፡ sing. ቀ፡ጠረ፡ pl. “count.”

β. *Form ሀሀሀ፡*

## SINGULAR.

Masc. ጠበቁ፡ } do thou observe.  
Fem. ጠበቁ፡ }

## PLURAL.

Com. ጠበቁ፡ do you observe.

(f) *Infinitive Mood.*

Is formed by prefixing መ፡ to the Simple root; and it presents the two forms: መከበረ፡ “to be honourable;” and መጠበቁ፡ “to observe.” With Prima Rad. Diphthong: መቀ፡ጠረ፡ “to number.” መቀ፡ፈረ፡ “to till,” “dig.”

(g) *Participles.*

α. Simple: act. ከባረ፡ one who is honoured.

pass. ጥመቁ፡ any thing dipped.

Eth. pass. ከበረ፡ honoured.



β. *Compound Part., Adjective, or Relative Participle.*

Ⲙ *For the Preterite*—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **P**: to the Preterite.

## SINGULAR.

3. masc. **Pḥnɛ:** he } who was  
 .. fem. **Pḥnɛḥ:** she } hon.  
 2. masc. **Pḥnɛy:** } thou who  
 .. fem. **Pḥnɛñ:** } wast hon.  
 .. hon. 1. **Pḥnɛ:** } you who  
 .. .. 2. **Pḥnɛḥy:** } were hon.  
 1. com. **Pḥnɛy:** I who was hon.

## PLURAL.

3. **Pḥnɛ:** they who were hon.  
 2. **Pḥnɛḥy:** you who were hon.  
 1. **Pḥnɛñ:** we who were hon.

Ⲛ *For the Present* — Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **Pḡ**—: to the forms of the Contingent Mood.

## SINGULAR.

3. masc. **Pḡḥnɛ:** he } who is  
 .. fem. **Pḡḥnɛḥ:** she } hon.  
 2. masc. **Pḡḥnɛy:** } thou who  
 .. fem. **Pḡḥnɛñ:** } art hon.  
 .. hon. 1. **Pḡḥnɛ:** } you who  
 .. .. 2. **Pḡḥnɛḥy:** } are hon.  
 1. com. **Pḡḥnɛ:** I who am hon.

## PLURAL.

3. **Pḡḥnɛ:** they who are hon.  
 2. **Pḡḥnɛḥy:** you who are hon.  
 1. **Pḡḥnɛñ:** we who are hon.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Simple Participial forms are used in their verbal as well as in a nominal character. This is evident in Active Verbs; *e.g.* **ḡḡḡ:** “observing,” “watching,” “guarding”; and “guardian,” “observer”: which may have its object connected with it either in the Genitive Case, when it is considered as a Noun, *e.g.* **Pḡḡḡ: ḡḡḡ:** “a keeper, guardian, of sheep,” “shepherd”; or in the Accusative Case, **ḡḡḡ: ḡḡḡ:** “one keeping, watching the sheep.” The Passive forms are resolvable by the two compound forms (Ⲙ) and (Ⲛ) of the Passive Conjugations.

2. The two compound forms of the Relative or Adjective Participle evince their Participial character (which consists in partaking—*participiendo*—of the properties of the Verb as well as of the Noun, and forming a connecting link between both) by the position in which they stand when connected with Nouns, as Adjectives; by the treatment they experience from other Transitive Verbs, when being put into the Accusative Case; and by the influence they themselves exercise on Nouns and Pronouns. As this subject, however, belongs more properly to the Syntax, we shall leave it for the present.







|                                |                             |                    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| ተከፍቶ፡ ነበርኸ፡                    | thou wast opening,          | ተከፍቲ፡ ነበርኸ፡        |
| ተከፍቶ፡ ትሆኛለኸ፡                   | { thou wilt be }<br>opening | ተከፍቲ፡ ትሆኛለኸ፡       |
| ተክፈቶ፡ mayest thou open . . . . |                             | ተክፈቲ፡              |
| ክፈቶ፡ do thou open . . . . .    |                             | ክፈቲ፡               |
| ከፍቼ፡ I opening . . . . .       |                             | ከፍቲ፡               |
| ከፍቻላሁ፡ I open . . . . .        |                             | ከፍትያለሁ፡            |
| ከፍቼ፡ ነበርሁ፡ & ከፍቼ፡ እሆኛለሁ፡       |                             | ከፍቲ፡ እሆኛለሁ፡ & ከፍቲ፡ |
|                                |                             | ነበርሁ፡።             |

|                                 |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|
| ትለምኛለሽ: thou beggest . . . .    | ትለምንያለሽ: |
| ትለምኝ: &c. . . . .               | ትለምኒ:    |
| ለምኝ: do thou beg . . . . .      | ለምኒ:     |
| ለምኛ: I begging . . . . .        | ለምኔ:     |
| ለምኛለሁ: I am (was) begging . . . | ለምንያለሁ:: |

|                                  |          |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| ትመርዛልሽ: thou poisonest . . . .   | ትመርዛያልሽ: |
| ትመርዝ: &c. . . . .                | ትመርዛ:    |
| መርዝ: and መርዥ: do thou poison,    | መርዛ:     |
| መርዜ: I poisoning . . . . .       | መርዜ:     |
| መርዛልሁ: I poison (poisoned) . . . | መርዛያልሁ:  |

|         |                           |          |
|---------|---------------------------|----------|
| ትወርጧለሽ፡ | thou descendest . . . .   | ትወርድዋለሽ፡ |
| ትወርጿ፡   | &c. . . . .               | ትወርዷ፡    |
| ትውረጿ፡   | mayest thou descend . . . | ትውረዷ፡    |
| ውረጿ፡    | do thou descend . . . .   | ውረዷ፡     |
| ወርጿ፡    | &c., I descending . . . . | ወርዷ፡     |
| ወርጧለሁ፡  | I was, am descending . .  | ወርድዋለሁ፡  |

ትወግጫለሽ: thou poundest . . . . ትወግጥለሽ:  
ትወግጭ: &c. . . . . ትወግጢ::  
ትወግግጭ: mayest thou pound . . . . ትወግጢ:  
ወግጭ: do thou pound . . . . . ወግጢ:



**ፀግፎ**: I pounding &c. . . . . **ፀግፎ**:

**ፀግፍለሁ**: I am (was) pounding . . **ፀግፍለሁ**::

8. **ገሠጸ**: "he reproved," "chastised." **ሠረፀ**: "he proceeded." The changes are the same as in No. 7.

#### B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

whose characteristic is a prolongation of the first radical, by which it is changed from the first into the fourth form. Its force is intensity of the idea of the original form.

**ሳደበ**: he scolded exceedingly.

Its difference in form, from the First Conjugation, is as follows:

1. It retains the first long radical throughout; on this account, it
2. Has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive, but is served by the Contingent Mood.
3. In the Imperative, the first radical is long, of the fourth: the second short, of the sixth order.
4. In the Infinitive, the first radical is of the fourth; the second, as in all the conjugations, of the first order.

The mode of conjugating being the same as in the first species, we shall give only the Third Person, Singular and Plural, in those Moods and Tenses which have it.

#### 1. INDICATIVE.

##### *Preterite.*

|              |                            |  |              |                              |
|--------------|----------------------------|--|--------------|------------------------------|
| 3d pers.     | SINGULAR.                  |  | 3d pers.     | PLURAL.                      |
| <b>ሳደበ</b> : | he scolded exceedingly &c. |  | <b>ሳደቡ</b> : | they scolded exceedingly &c. |

##### *Present and Future.*

|                |                                |  |                |                                   |
|----------------|--------------------------------|--|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>ደሳደባል</b> : | { he scolds exceedingly<br>&c. |  | <b>ደሳደባሉ</b> : | { they scold exceed-<br>ingly &c. |
|----------------|--------------------------------|--|----------------|-----------------------------------|

#### 2. CONTINGENT.

##### *Simple.*

|               |  |               |
|---------------|--|---------------|
| <b>ደሳደብ</b> : |  | <b>ደሳደቡ</b> : |
|---------------|--|---------------|

##### *Compound Preterite.*

|                   |                                                                                                       |  |                    |                 |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------|-----------------|
| <b>ደሳደብ ነበረ</b> : | { he scolded, had<br>scolded, was scold-<br>ing, would scold,<br>would have scold-<br>ed exceedingly. |  | <b>ደሳደቡ ነበሩ</b> :: | he scolded, &c. |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------|-----------------|

##### *Compound of Uncertainty.*

|               |                          |  |                     |
|---------------|--------------------------|--|---------------------|
| <b>ደሳደብ</b> : | { he may (perhaps) scold |  | <b>ደሳደቡ ይሆናሉ</b> :: |
| <b>ይሆናል</b> : | { exceedingly &c.        |  |                     |



## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ሳደቦ: he, scolding exceedingly &c. | ሳደብው: they scolding &c.

*Augmented Present and Perfect (Aorist).*

ሳደብዋል: { he scolds (scolded)  
exceedingly, &c. | ሳደብዋል: they scold, &c.

*Comp. Preterite.*

ሳደቦ: ነበረ: { he scolded, was scold-  
ing exceedingly, &c. | ሳደብው: ነበረ: they scolded, &c.

*Comp. of Uncertainty.*

ሳደቦ: ይሆናል: he may (perhaps) scold exceedingly, &c.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ሳደብ: } do thou scold. | ሳደቡ: { do you scold exceedingly,  
Fem. ሳደቡ: } &c.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

መሳደብ: to scold, the scolding.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominascens.*—ሳደቡ: “a scolder,” “one who scolds exceedingly.”

2. *Adject.*—የሚሳደብ: &c. “one who scolds exceedingly,” &c.

Of course, there is no Passive Participle of this form.

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.*—The characteristic is an **ኣ**: prefixed to the radix; which puts the Personal Preformatives, excepting **ኣ**:, into the fourth order.

*Form* ኣከበረ: “he honoured.”

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ኣከበረ: he honoured, &c. as ከበረ: | ኣከበሩ: they honoured, &c.

*Present and Future.*

ያከብራል: he honours. | ያከብራሉ: they honour, &c.  
ታከብራለች: she honours, &c. |

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

ያከብር: ታከብር: &c. &c. | ያከብሩ: &c.



| SINGULAR.             | Compound Preterite. | PLURAL.               |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ያከብር፡ ነበረ፡</b> &c. |                     | <b>ያከብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡</b> &c. |

*Compound of Uncertainty.*

**ያከብር፡ ይሆናል፡** he may (perhaps) honour, &c.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

**ያክበር፡** may he (let him) honour, &c. as **ይክበር፡** &c.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

**አክብር፡** he honouring.

**አክብራ፡** she honouring.

**አክብረህ፡** } thou honouring.  
**አክብረሽ፡** }

**አክብረው፡** } you honouring.  
**አክብራችሁ፡** }

**አክብረ፡** I honouring.

**አክብረው፡** they honouring.

**አክብራችሁ፡** you honouring.

**አክብረን፡** we honouring.

*Augmented Present and Preterite.*

**አክብርዋል፡** { he honours (ho-  
noured) &c.

**አክብረዋል፡** { they honour (ho-  
noured) &c.

*Compound Preterite.*

**አክብር፡ ነበረ፡** he honoured, &c. | **አክብረው፡ ነበሩ፡** they honoured, &c.

|       | SINGULAR.      | 5. IMPERATIVE. | PLURAL.                    |
|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| Masc. | <b>አክበር፡</b> } |                | <b>አክበሩ፡</b> do ye honour. |
| Fem.  | <b>አክበራ፡</b> } |                |                            |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማክበር፡** to honour, the honouring.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominal*, **አክባሪ፡** the honourer, one who honours.

2. *Adject.* { **የሚያከብር፡** he who honours.  
**ያክበረ፡** he who honoured.

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**ተሰደበ፡** "he was reviled."

Its nature is pre-eminently *Passive* (objective), and reflective. Its characteristic is the Preformative **ተ**: to the original form in the Preterite, Constructive, and Imperative, which, in the same manner as in the cognate languages, gives way to the other Preformatives in the process of conjugations. The second radical remains unchanged in all the moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive Moods. So does also the first radical in the Infinitive Mood. These two remarks serve to distinguish this and the other *Passive* Conjugations from the rest.



## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. **ተሰደበ**: he was reviled. | **ተሰደቡ**: they were reviled,  
&c. &c., the same as **ከበረ**: &c.

*Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. **ደሰደገል**: { he is (will  
be) reviled.

3d p. c. **ደሰደገሉ**: { they are  
(will be)  
reviled.

... fem. **ተሰደገለች**: { she is (will  
be) reviled.

2d pers. masc. **ተሰደገለህ**: } thou art  
... fem. **ተሰደገለህሽ**: } (wilt be)

**ተሰደገለችሁ**: { you are  
(will be)

... hon. 1. **ደሰደገሉ**: } you are

... 2. **ተሰደገለችሁ**: } (will be)

1st .. com. **ኔሰደገለሁ**: I am (shall be)

**ኔንሰደገለን**: { we are  
(shall be)

reviled.

reviled.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. **ደሰደገ**: fem. **ተሰደገ**:

2d .. .. **ተሰደገ**: fem. **ተሰደገ**:

.. .. hon. 1. **ደሰደገ**: 2. **ተሰደገ**:

1st .. com. **ኔሰደገ**:

**ደሰደገ**:**ተሰደገ**:**ኔንሰደገ**:*Compound Preterite.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

**ደሰደገ ነበረ**: he was (would be), had been (would have been), reviled,  
&c. &c.

PLURAL.

**ደሰደገ ነበሩ**: they were (would be), had been (would have been),  
reviled, &c. &c.

*Compound of Uncertainty.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. **ደሰደገ ይሆናል**: { he may (per-  
haps) be re-  
viled, &c. &c.

**ደሰደገ ይሆናሉ**: { they may (per-  
haps) be re-  
viled, &c. &c.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.



## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

| SINGULAR.     |                 | Simple.            | PLURAL.         |            |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>ተሰደቦ</b> :   | he being reviled.  | <b>ተሰደበው</b> :  | they being |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ተሰደባ</b> :   | she being reviled. | } reviled.      |            |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>ተሰደባህ</b> :  | } thou being re-   | <b>ተሰደባችሁ</b> : | you being  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ተሰደባሽ</b> :  |                    |                 |            |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ተሰደበው</b> :  | } you being        |                 |            |
| .. .. 2.      | <b>ተሰደባችሁ</b> : |                    |                 |            |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>ተሰደቤ</b> :   | I being reviled.   | <b>ተሰደቡን</b> :  | we being   |

*Augmented Aorist.*

| SINGULAR.     |                  |             | PLURAL.          |      |
|---------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|------|
| 3d p. m.      | <b>ተሰደብዋል</b> :  | he } is     | <b>ተሰደበዋል</b> :  | they |
| .. .. f.      | <b>ተሰደባለች</b> :  | she } (was) |                  |      |
| 2d .. m.      | <b>ተሰደባሃል</b> :  | } thou art  | <b>ተሰደባችኋል</b> : | you  |
| .. .. f.      | <b>ተሰደባሽል</b> :  |             |                  |      |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ተሰደበዋል</b> :  | } you are   |                  | are  |
| .. .. 2.      | <b>ተሰደባችኋል</b> : |             |                  |      |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>ተሰደብደሁ</b> :  | { I am      | <b>ተሰደበናል</b> :  | we   |
|               |                  | (was)       |                  |      |

| SINGULAR. |               | Compound Preterite.                            | PLURAL.        |                                            |
|-----------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 3d p. m.  | <b>ተሰደቦ</b> : | { he was (had<br>been) reviled,<br>&c. &c. &c. | <b>ተሰደበው</b> : | { they were (had been)<br>reviled, &c. &c. |
|           | <b>ነበረ</b> :  |                                                | <b>ነበሩ</b> :   |                                            |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|       |               |                                                   |               |                                           |
|-------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Masc. | <b>ተሰደብ</b> : | { do thou be (sub-<br>mit to being) re-<br>viled. | <b>ተሰደቡ</b> : | { do you be (submit to<br>being) reviled. |
| Fem.  | <b>ተሰደባ</b> : |                                                   |               |                                           |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መሰደብ**: to be reviled, the being reviled.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

- (a) *Nominal*, **ተሰደባ**: one who is reviled.  
 (b) *Relative*, α. *Perf.* **የተሰደበ**: he who was (has been) reviled.  
 β. *Pres.* **የሚሰደብ**: he who is reviled.



## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

**አናገረ:** He made (caused to) speak.

The nature of this verb is doubly transitive, or *causative*. It combines the characteristics of both the second and the third conjugations; the prolongation of the first radical giving intensity to the transitively (by **አ:**) augmented form.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.     |                             | PLURAL.        |           |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>አናገረ:</b> } he made      | <b>አናገረ:</b>   | they made |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>አናገረች:</b> } she made    |                |           |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>አናገርህ:</b> } thou madest | <b>አናገረችሁ:</b> | you made  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>አናገርሽ:</b> }             |                |           |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>አናገሩ:</b> }              |                |           |
| .. .. 2.      | <b>አናገረችሁ:</b> } you made   |                |           |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>አናገርሁ:</b> I made        | <b>አናገርን:</b>  | we made   |

to speak.

to speak.

*Present and Future.*

|               |                                  |                 |                         |
|---------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>ያናገራል:</b> he } makes         | <b>ያናገራሉ:</b>   | they                    |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ታናገራለች:</b> she } (will make) |                 |                         |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>ታናገራለህ:</b> } thou makest     | <b>ታናገራላችሁ:</b> | you                     |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ታናገርያለሽ:</b> } (will make)    |                 |                         |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ያናገራሉ:</b> } you make         |                 |                         |
| .. .. 2.      | <b>ታናገራላችሁ:</b> } (will make)    |                 |                         |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>አናገራለሁ:</b> } I make          | <b>አናናገራለን:</b> | we                      |
|               | (shall make)                     |                 | make (will, shall make) |

to speak.

to speak.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

|            |                                |                |
|------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| 3d pers.   | <b>ያናገር:</b> fem. <b>ታናገር:</b> | <b>ያናገሩ:</b>   |
| 2d ..      | <b>ታናገር:</b> fem. <b>ታናገሪ:</b> | <b>ታናገሩ:</b>   |
| .. hon. 1. | <b>ያናገሩ:</b> 2. <b>ታናገሩ:</b>   | <b>አናናገር::</b> |
| 1.         | <b>አናገር:</b>                   |                |

*Compound Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.      |                                                                                     | PLURAL.                                        |  |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--|
| 3d pers. masc. | <b>ያናገር: ነበር:</b> { he' made (would make), had made (would have made) to speak, &c. | <b>ያናገሩ: ነበሩ:</b> { they made &c. to speak &c. |  |



*Compound of Uncertainty.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

**ያናገር፡ ይህናል፡** { he may (per-  
haps) make to  
speak, &c.

PLURAL.

**ያናገሩ፡ ይህናሉ፡** { they may (per-  
haps) make to  
speak, &c.

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*3d p. masc. **አናገር፡** he... fem. **አናገራ፡** she2d .. masc. **አናገረህ፡** } thou... fem. **አናገረሽ፡** }... hon. 1. **አናገረው፡** }... .. 2. **አናገራችሁ፡** } you1st.. com. **አናገረ፡** I

making to speak.

**አናገረው፡** they**አናገራችሁ፡** you

making to speak.

**አናገረን፡** we*Compound Aorist.*

3d pers. masc.

**አናገርዋል፡** { he makes (made) to  
speak, &c.

**አናገረዋል፡** { they make (made) to  
speak, &c.

*Compound Preterite.*

**አናገር፡ ነበረ፡** { he made (had  
made) to speak, &c.

**አናገረው፡ ነበረ፡** { they made (had made)  
to speak, &c.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አናገር፡** { do thou make toFem. **አናገራ፡** { speak.**አናገሩ፡** do ye make to speak.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማናገር፡** to make or cause to speak; the causing to speak.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

(a) *Simple*, **አናገሪ፡** one who makes to speak.(b) *Relative*,α. *Perfect*, **ያናገረ፡** he who made to speak, &c.β. *Present*, **የሚያናገር፡** he who makes to speak, &c.

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

**ተናገረ፡** "He spoke."

The nature and force of this species is intensity, continuation, sometimes reciprocity, either of the original, or of the Fourth Conjugation. It



combines the properties of the Second (long first radical) and Fourth (Preformative **ṭ**;) Conjugations. The **ṭ** is found in the Preterite, Imperative, and Constructive Moods: the first radical is long throughout: the second is of the first order, in all moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

**ṭṭṭṭ**: he spoke, &c.

|

**ṭṭṭṭ**: they spoke, &c.*Present and Future.*

**ṭṭṭṭ**: he speaks (will speak) &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they speak (will speak)  
&c.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

3d pers. masc.

**ṭṭṭṭ**: fem. **ṭṭṭṭ**: &c.

|

**ṭṭṭṭ**: &c. &c.*Compound Preterite.***ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: he spoke &c.

|

**ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: they spoke &c.*Compound of Uncertainty.*

**ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { he may (per-  
haps) speak &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they may (per-  
haps) speak &c.

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

*Simple.***ṭṭṭṭ**: he speaking &c.

|

**ṭṭṭṭ**: they speaking &c.*Compound Aorist.*

**ṭṭṭṭ**: he speaks or spoke &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: they speak or spoke &c.

*Compound Preterite.*

**ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { he spoke (had  
spoken), &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they spoke (had  
spoken), &c.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ṭṭṭṭ**: }  
Fem. **ṭṭṭṭ**: } do thou speak.

|

**ṭṭṭṭ**: do ye speak.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ṭṭṭṭ**: to speak, the speaking.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: a speaker, speaking.*Relative (a) Perfect*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: he who spoke.(b) *Present*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: he who speaks.



## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

**ተምዋከረ**: he tried.**ተምዋገተ**: he disputed.

No other instances of this conjugation present themselves to us, except these two. The peculiarity of this conjugation, *i.e.* the change of a radical of the first or of the fourth order into two letters, into the radical of the sixth, with the **ዋ**: of the fourth order, is so frequent in Shoa in other instances, that we apprehend the use of this conjugation itself may be of no small extent. Its force differs not from the sixth conjugation, with which it is identical, except in the change of the first radical.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

**ተምዋከረ**: he tried, &c.

PLURAL.

| **ተምዋከሩ**: they tried, &c.*Present and Future.***ይምዋከራል**: he tries (will try) &c. | **ይምዋከራሉ**: they try (will try) &c.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.***ይምዋከር**: &c.| **ይምዋከሩ**: &c.*Compound Preterite.***ይምዋከር ነበረ**: he tried, &c. | **ይምዋከሩ ነበሩ**: they tried, &c.*Compound of Uncertainty.*

|                |                   |  |                |                      |
|----------------|-------------------|--|----------------|----------------------|
| <b>ይምዋከር</b> : | { he probably has |  | <b>ይምዋከሩ</b> : | { they probably have |
| <b>ይሆናል</b> :  | { tried, &c.      |  | <b>ይሆናሉ</b> :  | { tried, &c.         |

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

3d pers. masc.

**ተምዋክሮ**: he trying, &c.| **ተምዋክረው**: they trying, &c.*Compound Aorist.*

|                   |                       |  |                  |                      |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------|----------------------|
| <b>ተምዋክሮ ዋል</b> : | he tries or tried &c. |  | <b>ተምዋክረዋል</b> : | { they try or tried, |
|                   |                       |  |                  | { &c.                |

*Compound Preterite.*

|                |                        |  |                 |                   |
|----------------|------------------------|--|-----------------|-------------------|
| <b>ተምዋክሮ</b> : | { he tried, had tried, |  | <b>ተምዋክረው</b> : | { they tried, had |
| <b>ነበረ</b> :   | { &c.                  |  | <b>ነበሩ</b> :    | { tried, &c.      |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                      |                |  |                |            |
|----------------------|----------------|--|----------------|------------|
| Masc. <b>ተምዋክር</b> : | { do thou try. |  | <b>ተምዋከሩ</b> : | do ye try. |
| Fem. <b>ተምዋክሪ</b> :  |                |  |                |            |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መምዋከር**: to try, the trying, trial.



## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **ተምዋካሪ**: one who tries.

*Relative* (a) *Perfect*, **የተምዋከረ**: he who tried, &c.

(b) *Present*, **የሚምዋክር**: he who tries, &c.

## II. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

**አስከበረ**: He caused to honour, caused to be honoured.

This is the most frequent form for the causative voice. Its characteristic is the prefixion of the two letters **አስ**: to the original form, with which it has nearly the same mode of conjugation. The second radical is, in the Contingent and all other forms derived from it, put into the sixth order. But it has no Subjunctive form. The Imperative has the Contingent form of the radicals. The Infinitive has the first and second radicals in the first order. The Personal Preformatives are put before the **አስ**: absorbing the **አ**:

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

3d pers.

PLURAL.

**አስከበረ**: he caused to be hon. &c.

**አስከበሩ**: { they caused to be  
honoured, &c.

*Present and Future.*

3d p. masc. **ያስከብራል**: he causes &c.

... fem. **ታስከብራለች**: she causes &c.

2d .. masc. **ታስከብራለህ**: } thou causest &c.  
... fem. **ታስከብርያለሽ**: }

... hon. 1. **ያስከብራሉ**: } you cause &c.  
... .. 2. **ታስከብራላችሁ**: }

1st.. com. **አስከብራለሁ**: I cause &c.

to be honoured.

**ያስከብራሉ**: they

**ታስከብራላችሁ**: you

**አናስከብራለን**: we

cause to be honoured.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ያስከብር**: fem. **ታስከብር**:

2d .. .. **ታስከብር**: fem. **ታስከብሪ**:

... hon. 1. **ያስከብሩ**: 2d **ታስከብሩ**:

1st.. **አስከብር**:

PLURAL.

**ያስከብሩ**:

**ታስከብሩ**:

**አናስከብር**:

3d pers. masc.

*Compound Preterite.*

**ያስከብር**: } he caused, &c. to be  
**ነበረ**: } honoured, &c.

**ያስከብሩ**: } they caused, &c. to be  
**ነበሩ**: } honoured, &c.



*Compound of Probability.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|               |   |                                           |  |               |   |                                             |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------------|--|---------------|---|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>ያስከብር:</b> | } | he (probably) may<br>cause to be hon. &c. |  | <b>ያስከብሩ:</b> | } | they (probably) may<br>cause to be hon. &c. |
| <b>ይሆናል:</b>  |   |                                           |  | <b>ይሆናሉ:</b>  |   |                                             |

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

*Simple.*

|               |   |                                     |  |               |   |                                     |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|--|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| <b>አስከብር:</b> | } | he causing to be ho-<br>noured, &c. |  | <b>አስከብሩ:</b> | } | they causing to be<br>honoured, &c. |
| <b>እንከብሩ:</b> |   |                                     |  | <b>እንከብሩ:</b> |   |                                     |

*Compound Aorist.*

|                 |   |                                      |  |                 |   |                                       |
|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>አስከብረዋል:</b> | } | he causes (caused)<br>to be hon. &c. |  | <b>አስከብረዋል:</b> | } | they cause (caused)<br>to be hon. &c. |
| <b>እንከብረዋል:</b> |   |                                      |  | <b>እንከብረዋል:</b> |   |                                       |

*Compound Preterite.*

|               |   |                                               |  |                |   |                                                      |
|---------------|---|-----------------------------------------------|--|----------------|---|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>አስከብረ:</b> | } | he caused (had caused)<br>to be honoured, &c. |  | <b>አስከብረው:</b> | } | they caused (had<br>caused) to be ho-<br>noured, &c. |
| <b>እንከብረ:</b> |   |                                               |  | <b>እንከብረው:</b> |   |                                                      |

5. IMPERATIVE.

|                     |   |                                  |  |               |                        |
|---------------------|---|----------------------------------|--|---------------|------------------------|
| Masc. <b>አስከብር:</b> | } | do thou cause to<br>be honoured. |  | <b>አስከብሩ:</b> | do ye cause to be hon. |
| Fem. <b>አስከብሪ:</b>  |   |                                  |  | <b>አስከብሩ:</b> |                        |

6. INFINITIVE.

**ማስከበር:** to cause to be honoured, the causing to be honoured, the  
procuring honour.

7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,***አስከባሪ:** one who causes to be honoured.*Relative,*(a) *Pret.* **ያስከበረ:** he who caused &c.(b) *Pres.* **ያሚያስከብር:** he who causes to be honoured, &c.

## I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

**አስመዛል:** He caused to resemble; he flattered, dissimulated.

The difference of this conjugation from the preceding is so slight, that we do not find it necessary to give its flexion: it consists merely in the second radical being constantly long, except in the Constructive: in all the rest it is similar to the preceding **አስከበረ**: As to the third radical **ል**: we refer to the deviations marked under the First Conjugation, No. 1. This conjugation, by the way, is very rare.



## J. TENTH CONJUGATION.

**አስተነገረ:** He made to speak.

The force of this conjugation is Causative, as the two preceding ones. The difference consists in the form being augmented by three letters, **አስተ:** instead of the two **አስ:**

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

**አስተነገረ:** he made to speak, &c.

PLURAL.

**አስተነገሩ:** they made to speak, &c.*Present and Future.***ያስተነገራል:** { he makes &c. to  
speak, &c.**ያስተነገራሉ:** { they make &c. to  
speak, &c.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

3d pers. masc.

**ያስተነገር:** &c.**ያስተነገሩ:** &c.*Compound Preterite.***ያስተነገር፡ነበረ:** &c. { he made &c.  
to speak, &c.**ያስተነገሩ፡ነበሩ:** { they made &c.  
to speak, &c.*Compound of Probability.***ያስተነገር:** { he may probably  
**ይሆናል:** { make to speak, &c.**ያስተነገሩ:** { they may probably  
**ይሆናሉ:** { cause to speak, &c.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

3d pers. masc.

**አስተነገር:** he causing to speak, &c.**አስተነገሩ:** they causing to  
speak, &c.*Compound Aorist.***አስተነገርዋል:** { he causes (caused)  
to speak, &c.**አስተነገሩዋል:** { they cause (caused)  
to speak, &c.*Compound Preterite.***አስተነገር፡ነበረ:** { he caused &c.  
to speak, &c.**አስተነገሩ፡ነበሩ:** { they caused &c. to  
speak, &c.

3d pers. masc.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

**ያስተነገር:** { may he cause to speak,  
&c. the same as  
**ያክበር::****ያስተነገሩ:** { may they cause to  
speak, &c.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስተነገር:** { do thou makeFem. **አስተነገራ:** { to speak.**አስተነገሩ:** do you make to speak.



## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማስተንገረ**: to cause (the causing) to speak.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **አስተንገሪ**: one who causes to speak.

*Relative Perfect*, **ያስተነገረ**: he who caused to speak.

*Present*, **የሚያስተነግር**: he who causes to speak.

## K. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

**ተዋዋረደ**: He was entirely humbled; humbled himself entirely.

The force of this conjugation is intensity added to forms D and F: its characteristic is reduplication of the prolonged first radical with the objective **ተ**: prefixed. As its conjugation is the same as **ተናገረ**: we abstain from detailing it.

## L. TWELFTH CONJUGATION.

**ሰገበረ**: Broke to pieces.

The force of this conjugation is intense action, represented by a reduplication of the second radical.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

**ሰገበረ**: he broke to pieces, &c.

PLURAL.

**ሰገበሩ**: they broke to pieces, &c.

*Present and Future.*

**ያሰገብራል**: { he breaks, &c. to  
pieces, &c.

**ያሰገብሩሉ**: { they break, &c. to  
pieces, &c.

3d pers. masc.

**ያሰገብር**: &c.

## 2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

**ያሰገብሩ**: &c.

*Compound Preterite.*

**ያሰገብር፡ ነበረ**: { he broke, &c.  
to pieces, &c.

**ያሰገብር፡ ነበሩ**: { they broke, &c.  
to pieces, &c.

*Compound of Probability.*

**ያሰገብር፡ ይሆናል**: { he may pro-  
bably break  
to pieces, &c.

**ያሰገብሩ፡ ይሆናሉ**: { they may probably  
break to pieces, &c.



## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

| SINGULAR.  |                      | PLURAL.         |                        |
|------------|----------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| 3d p. m.   | ይስጥብር: may he        | ይስጥብሩ: may they | break<br>to<br>pieces. |
| .. .. f.   | ትስጥብር: may she       | ትስጥብሩ: may you  |                        |
| 2d p. m.   | ትስጥብር: } mayest thou |                 |                        |
| .. .. f.   | ትስጥብሪ: }             |                 |                        |
| .. hon. 1. | ይስጥብሩ: may you       |                 |                        |
| .. hon. 2. | ትስጥብሩ:               |                 |                        |
| 1st ..     | እስጥብር: may I         | እንስጥብር: may we  |                        |

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

|                |                                  |                                          |
|----------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 3d pers. masc. | ሰጥብር: he breaking to pieces, &c. | ሰጥብረው: { they breaking to<br>pieces, &c. |
|----------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

*Compound Aorist.*

|                                               |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| ሰጥብርዋል: { he breaks (broke)<br>to pieces, &c. | ሰጥብረዋል: { they break (broke)<br>to pieces, &c. |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

*Compound Preterite.*

|                                              |                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| ሰጥብር: ነበረ: { he broke, &c. to<br>pieces, &c. | ሰጥብረው: ነበሩ: { they broke &c.<br>to pieces, &c. |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Masc. ስጥብር: } do thou break to | ስጥብሩ: do ye break to pieces, &c. |
| Fem. ስጥብሪ: } pieces, &c.       |                                  |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

መስጥበር: to break to pieces.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* ሰጥባሪ: one who breaks to pieces.*Rel. Pret.* የሰጥበረ: he that broke to pieces.*Pres.* የመጥሰጥብር: he that breaks to pieces.

## M. THIRTEENTH CONJUGATION.

እደራረገ: He performed great works.

The force of this conjugation is an addition of intensity to the Third Conjugation: this is represented by a reduplication and prolongation of the second radical, with the Preformative አ::

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| 3d pers. masc.                            | SINGULAR. | PLURAL.                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------|
| እደራረገ: { he performed great<br>works, &c. |           | እደራረጉ: { they performed great<br>works, &c. |



| SINGULAR.      |                 | <i>Present and Future.</i>             | PLURAL.                                            |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 3d pers. masc. | <b>የደራርጋል</b> : | { he performs, &c.<br>great works, &c. | <b>የደራርጋሉ</b> : { they perform great<br>works, &c. |

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>የደራርግ</b> : &c. | <b>የደራርጉ</b> : &c. |
|--------------------|--------------------|

*Compound Preterite.*

|                                                           |                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>የደራርግ ነበረ</b> : { he performed &c.<br>great works, &c. | <b>የደራርጉ ነበሩ</b> : { they performed<br>&c. great works,<br>&c. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|

*Compound of Probability.*

|                                                                            |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>የደራርግ</b> : { he may probably per-<br><b>ደሆኗል</b> : { form great works. | <b>የደራርጉ</b> : { they may probably<br><b>ደሆኑሉ</b> : { perform great works,<br>&c. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                                     |                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>የደራርግ</b> : { may he perform great<br>works, &c. | <b>የደራርጉ</b> : { may they perform<br>great works, &c. |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

|                                                |                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>አደራርጎ</b> : { he performing great<br>works. | <b>አደራርገው</b> : { they performing<br>great works, &c. |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|

*Compound Aorist.*

|                                                                   |                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>አደራርገል</b> : { he performs (per-<br>formed) great works<br>&c. | <b>አደራርገዋል</b> : { they perform (per-<br>formed) great<br>works, &c. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Compound Preterite.*

|                                                              |                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>አደራርጎ ነበረ</b> : { he performed,<br>&c. great works<br>&c. | <b>አደራርገው ነበሩ</b> : { they performed,<br>&c. great works,<br>&c. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                                                                              |                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Masc. <b>አደራርግ</b> : { do thou perform<br>Fem. <b>አደራርገ</b> : { great works. | <b>አደራርጉ</b> : { do ye perform great<br>works. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማደራረግ** : to perform (the performance of) great works.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* **አደራሪገ** : one who performs great works.*Rel. Perf.* **የደራረገ** : he who performed great works.*Pres.* **የሚደራርግ** : he who performs great works.



## N. FOURTEENTH CONJUGATION.

**ተመካከረ:** He counselled with others, gave and took advice, advised frequently.

**ተመለለሰ:** He went and returned, went to and fro, *i.e.* walked.

The force of this conjugation is double intensity, reciprocity, and repetition of the action expressed in the verb. This is represented by reduplication and prolongation of the second radical. Its flexion and conjugation is quite the same as in the Sixth Conjugation.

## O. FIFTEENTH CONJUGATION.

**ተናገረ:** He conversed with another, spoke frequently.

The nature of this conjugation is the same as the preceding; and as to form, it differs only in having the first radical long, in conformity with the sixth species, which it resembles entirely in flexion and conjugation.

## P. Q. R. S. SIXTEENTH, SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, &amp; NINETEENTH CONJUGATIONS.

**ደነዘዘ:** "To be stiff," "obdurate." *Intransitive.*

**አደነዘዘ:** "To stiffen." *Transitive.*

**ተመለሰሰ:** "He returned," "was returned." *Passive, & Reflective.*

**ተሸማጠጠ:** "He reviled." *Intensive.*

The chief peculiarity of these four species consists in doubling the third radical, or gemination.—As we shall have an opportunity of treating more fully upon the Geminant Verbs, we merely mention these forms here; and pass on to the remaining forms of the Regular Triliteral Verb.

## T. TWENTIETH CONJUGATION.

**አደናገረ:** He talked one out of any thing, dissuaded.

This and the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth species are rather remarkable for their singular Preformatives, which are not in use in the cognate dialects. The conjugation of **አደናገረ:** is similar to that of **አደራረገ:** we therefore proceed.

## U. TWENTY-FIRST CONJUGATION.

**አወሸፍገረ:** He folded his hands.

In what the peculiar force of this species consists, we cannot determine.

## V. TWENTY-SECOND CONJUGATION.

**ፈተተለ:** He rubbed thin between his fingers.

The reduplication of the second and of the third radical, which consti-



tutes the peculiar character of this species, serves to express, as a sort of diminution, a peculiar modification of the original action.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

**ἔτριψεν**: { he rubbed thin between  
his fingers, &c. | **ἔτριψον**: they rubbed thin, &c.

*Present and Future.*

**τριψεν**: he rubs thin, &c. | **τριψον**: they rub thin, &c.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.*

3d pers. masc.

**τριψεν**: &c.| **τριψον**: &c.*Compound Preterite.*

**ἔτριψεν**: { he rubbed (&c.) thin,  
| **ἔτριψον**: { they rubbed (&c.)  
**ἰν**: } &c. | **ἰν**: } thin, &c.

*Compound of Probability.*

**τριψεν**: { he may probably  
| **τριψον**: { they may probably  
**εὔρει**: } rub thin, &c. &c. | **εὔρει**: } rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

**τριψεν**: may he rub thin, &c. | **τριψον**: may they rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

## 4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

**τριψεν**: he rubbing thin, &c. | **τριψον**: they rubbing thin &c.

*Compound Aorist.*

**ἔτριψεν**: { he rubs (rubbed)  
| **ἔτριψον**: { they rub (rubbed)  
thin, &c. | thin, &c.

*Compound Preterite.*

**ἔτριψεν**: { he rubbed (was rub-  
| **ἔτριψον**: { they rubbed (were  
**ἰν**: } bing) thin, &c. | **ἰν**: } rubbing) thin, &c.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **τριψε**: { do thou rub  
| **τριψον**: do you rub thin, &c.  
Fem. **τριψε**: { thin, &c.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**τριψεν**: to rub thin, the rubbing thin between the fingers.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,***τριψεν**: one who rubs thin, &c.*Relative Perf.***τριψεν**: he who has rubbed thin, &c.*Pres.***τριψεν**: he who rubs thin, &c. &c.



IV. TWENTY-THIRD CONJUGATION.

**ተፈተለ**: It was rubbed thin between the fingers.

This is a Passive derivation from the preceding conjugation, to be treated entirely as the Fourth Conjugation.

X. TWENTY-FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**አንጸበረቀ**: It shone, glittered, sparkled, resplended.

This form seems to be derived from **በረቀ**: "to fulminate," "to lighten"; and the Preformative **አንጸ**—: appears to have either a diminutive or a frequentative effect.

2. *Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of the Triliteral Verbs.*

Having thus exhibited the conjugation of the various forms of the Regular and Perfect Triliteral Verb, we now proceed to the consideration of the Imperfect Forms of Triliteral, of Perfect and Imperfect Forms of Biliteral, and of the various forms of Pluriliteral Verbs. We shall endeavour to point out, especially by paradigms, where it is necessary, and the peculiarities in the flexion and conjugation of each; not in order to accumulate materials for the memory, but to facilitate the comprehension of the structure of this part of the language. We notice,

I. TRILITERAL VERBS whose First Conjugation is A (**አ**: or **ዐ**::)

The chief peculiarity of these verbs consists in the liability under which they are to have the first radical contracted with every Preformative acceding to the Verb, according to the rule laid down in Part I. Chap. VII. 2. A.B. For the purpose of exemplifying, we select the two Verbs **አመነ**: "he believed," and **አለፈ**: "he passed."

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Simple Form*, **አመነ**: He believed.

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite*. Regular, as **ከበረ**::

*Present and Future*.

| SINGULAR.  |         |                        | PLURAL.    |            |                     |            |
|------------|---------|------------------------|------------|------------|---------------------|------------|
| p. masc.   | የምናል:   | he                     | } believe. | የምናሉ:      | they believe, will  | } believe. |
| .. fem.    | ተምናለች:  | she                    |            | } believe. | } you believe, will |            |
| .. masc.   | ትምናለህ:  | } thou believest, wilt |            |            |                     |            |
| .. fem.    | ትምናለሽ:  |                        |            |            |                     |            |
| .. hon. 1. | የምናሉ:   | } you believe, will    |            | } believe. | } we believe, shall |            |
| .. .. 2.   | ትምናለችሁ: |                        |            |            |                     |            |
| .. com.    | አምናለሁ:  | I believe, shall       |            |            |                     |            |
|            |         |                        |            |            |                     |            |



## 2. CONTINGENT,

As the Indicative Present, without the Auxiliary **አለ**:

| SINGULAR.     |                      | 3. SUBJUNCTIVE. | PLURAL.                        |
|---------------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>ይመን</b> : may he  | } believe:      | <b>ይመኑ</b> : may they believe. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ትመን</b> : may she |                 |                                |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>ትመን</b> : }       |                 | <b>ትመኑ</b> : may you believe.  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ትመኑ</b> : }       |                 |                                |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ይመኑ</b> : }       |                 |                                |
| .. .. .. 2.   | <b>ትመኑ</b> : }       |                 |                                |
| 1st. . com.   | <b>አመን</b> : may I   |                 | <b>አንመን</b> : may we believe.  |

3d pers. masc.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

**አምኖ**: he believing, &c.**አምነው**: they believing, &c.Regular; as, **ከብሮ**: &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አመን**: } do thou believe!Fem. **አመኑ**: }**አመኑ**: do ye believe!

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማመን**: to believe, the believing, faith, trust.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,***አማኝ**: one who believes, a believer.*Relative Perfect,***የመነ**: he who believed. **የመነች**: she who believed, &c.*Relative Present,***የሚያምን**: he who believes, &c.**የምትምን**: she who believes, &c.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Objective Voice.***ተመነ**: He was believed, accredited, was trustworthy, faithful, entrusted himself.

Flexion and Conjugation according to the Fourth Conjugation of the Regular Triliteral Verb; with the exception, that the characteristic **ተ**: because it has joined to itself the vowel of the first radical, is not dropped, but retained in all the forms.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

**ተመነ**: he was trusted, &c.

PLURAL.

**ተመኑ**: they were trusted, &c.*Present and Future.***ይተመናል**: he is trusted, &c.**ይተመናሉ**: they are trusted, &c.



| SINGULAR.                                                          | 2. CONTINGENT.                                  | PLURAL. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------|
| <b>ይተመን</b> : &c.                                                  | <b>ይተመኑ</b> : &c.                               |         |
|                                                                    | 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.                              |         |
| 3d pers. masc.                                                     | 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.                                |         |
| <b>ተሞኖ</b> : he being trusted, &c.                                 | <b>ተሞኑው</b> : they being trusted, &c.           |         |
|                                                                    | 5. IMPERATIVE.                                  |         |
| Masc. <b>ተመን</b> : }<br>Fem. <b>ተመኑ</b> : }                        | <b>ተመኑ</b> : be ye faithful.                    |         |
|                                                                    | 6. INFINITIVE.                                  |         |
|                                                                    | <b>መተመን</b> : to be believed, faithfulness, &c. |         |
|                                                                    | 7. PARTICIPLES.                                 |         |
| <i>Simple</i> , <b>ተማኝ</b> : one who is believed.                  |                                                 |         |
| <i>Rel. Pret.</i> <b>የተመነ</b> : he who was believed, faithful, &c. |                                                 |         |
| <i>Present</i> , <b>የሚተመን</b> : he who is believed, &c.            |                                                 |         |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አሳመነ**: He made believe, persuaded.

This form corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb **አስከበረ**:: The first radical **አ**: is absorbed by the characteristic Pre-formative **አስ**:: No Subjunctive form.

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አስተመነ**: He accredited, attested, entrusted.

This form, which joins the characteristics of the Objective and of the Transitive Voice in nature and form, answers the Tenth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verb.

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተላለፈ**: Passed and repassed, trespassed, varied.

In this form, which corresponds with the Fourteenth Conjugation of the Regular Triliteral Verb, the first radical, **አ**:, is dropped; but the **ተ**: is retained when Prefixes are joined; *e.g.* Contingent, **ይተላለፍ**:: Infinitive, **መተላለፍ**::



## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative and Intensive Voice.***ኢስተላላፈ:** He made pass in different ways.In this form the Causative **ኢስ:** is joined to the preceding Conjugation.

## II. SECOND CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

*Triliteral Geminants.*

(See page 56, II.)

These verbs seem to have been derived from Biliterals which are lost, but whose second radical has been doubled. (See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.) In conjugating these verbs, the geminant letters are often contracted into one; but that letter, although the Abyssinians have no mark for distinguishing the accent, shows its origin, by having the tone.

It will be observed, that there are, among the ten different Conjugations of this class, four which have the **ኝ:**, either with the Transitive **ኣ:**, or the Intransitive **ተ:** prefixed.

In looking at the numerous verbs of this class, mentioned in the note, page 56, it will be seen that all classes of letters, except the gutturals and the vowel letters, are subject to gemination.

The general mode of conjugating being the same in this as in all other classes of verbs, attention is to be paid especially to those forms which have gemination, and to those which have the contraction.

After these preliminary remarks, we proceed to give the Paradigms.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ለቀቀ:** *neut.* He went away; *act.* He dismissed.

*Gemination* exists in this Conjugation—in the Indicative, Preterite, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive and Simple, and Relative Preterite Participles: *Contraction* in the remaining Moods and Tenses.

## 1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.     |                             | PLURAL.                      |
|---------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>ለቀቀ:</b> he dismissed.   | <b>ለቀቁ:</b> they dismissed.  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ለቀቀኙ:</b> she dismissed. |                              |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>ለቀቀህ:</b> }              | <b>ለቀቀኑህ:</b> you dismissed. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ለቀቀሽ:</b> }              |                              |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ለቀቁ:</b> }               | } you dismissed.             |
| .. .. . 2.    | <b>ለቀቀኑህ:</b> }             |                              |
| 1st .. com.   | <b>ለቀቁሁ:</b> I dismissed.   | <b>ለቀቁኑ:</b> we dismissed.   |



| SINGULAR.                             | <i>Present and Future.</i> | PLURAL.              |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 3d p. masc. ያለቃል: he                  | } dismisses.               | ያለቃሉ: they dismiss.  |
| .. .. fem. ትለቃለች: she                 |                            |                      |
| 2d .. masc. ትለቃለህ: } thou dismissest. |                            | ትለቃለችሁ: you dismiss. |
| .. .. fem. ትለቅያለሽ: }                  |                            |                      |
| .. .. hon. 1. ያለቃሉ: }                 | } you dismiss.             |                      |
| .. .. hon. 2. ትለቃለችሁ: }               |                            |                      |
| 1st .. com. ንለቃለሁ: I dismiss.         |                            | ንንለቃለን: we dismiss.  |

## 2. CONTINGENT.

|                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 3d p. masc. ያለቅ: fem. ትለቅ: | ያለቁ:  |
| 2d .. .. ትለቅ: fem. ትለቁ:    | ትለቁ:  |
| .. .. hon. 1. ያለቁ: 2. ትለቁ: |       |
| 1. ንለቅ:                    | ንንለቅ: |

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                 |            |                         |
|---------------------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. ያለቀቅ: may he        | } dismiss. | ያለቀቁ: may they dismiss. |
| .. .. fem. ትለቀቅ: may she        |            |                         |
| 2d .. masc. ትለቀቅ: } mayest thou |            | ትለቀቁ: may you dismiss.  |
| .. .. fem. ትለቀቁ: }              |            |                         |
| .. .. hon. 1. ያለቀቁ: }           |            |                         |
| .. .. .. 2. ትለቀቁ: }             |            |                         |
| 1st .. com. ንለቀቅ: may I         |            | ንንለቀቅ: may we dismiss.  |

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

|                         |               |                       |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 3d p. masc. ለቅ: he      | } dismissing. | ለቀው: they dismissing. |
| .. .. fem. ለቃ: she      |               |                       |
| 2d .. masc. ለቃህ: } thou |               | ለቃችሁ: you dismissing. |
| .. .. fem. ለቃሽ: }       |               |                       |
| .. .. hon. 1. ለቀው: }    |               |                       |
| .. .. .. 2. ለቃችሁ: }     |               |                       |
| 1st .. com. ለቁ: I       |               | ለቀን: we dismissing.   |

*Compound Aorist.*

|                                      |                |                     |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 3d p. masc. ለቋል: he dismisses, &c.   |                | ለቀዋል: they dismiss. |
| .. .. fem. ለቃለች: she dismisses.      |                |                     |
| 2d .. masc. ለቀሃል: } thou dismissest. |                | ለቃችኋል: you dismiss. |
| .. .. fem. ለቀሻል: }                   |                |                     |
| .. .. hon. 1. ለቀዋል: }                | } you dismiss. |                     |
| .. .. .. 2. ለቃችኋል: }                 |                |                     |
| 1st .. com. ለቅያለሁ: I dismiss.        |                | ለቀናል: we dismiss.   |



*Compound Preterite.*

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

**ለቀ፡ ነበረ፡** he dismissed, &c.

PLURAL.

| **ለቀው፡ ነበሩ፡** they dismissed, &c.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

*m.* **ለቀቅ፡** *fem.* **ለቀቂ፡** do thou dismiss. | **ለቀቁ፡** do ye dismiss.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መለቀቅ፡** To dismiss, the dismissal, dismissal.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple.**Simple Act.* **ለቀቂ፡** one who dismisses.*Pass.* **ለቀቂ፡** one who is dismissed.*Rel. Perf.* **የለቀቀ፡** he who has dismissed.*Pres.* **የመለቀቅ፡** he who dismisses.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active or Transitive Voice.***አረቀቀ፡** He thinned, rarefied, refined.

We need scarcely to mention, that this form corresponds with the Third Conjugation of the Perfect Triliterals. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Simple, and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative Present, the Contingent, and Rel. Part. Present; both Gemination and Contraction in the Constructive and Imperative. Having presented a pretty full view of the preceding conjugation, it will suffice in the present one to give merely the leading types; *i.e.* 3d person masc. sing. and common plural of those paradigms which have all the Persons, besides the more simple Moods.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

**አረቀቀ፡** he refined, &c.

PLURAL.

| **አረቁ፡** they refined.*Present and Future.***የረቃል፡** he refines.| **የረቃሉ፡** they refine.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

**የረቅ፡**| **የረቁ፡**

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

**የረቀቅ፡** may he refine.| **የረቁቁ፡** may they refine.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.***አረቅ፡** and **አረቅቀ፡** he refining.| **አረቀው፡** and } they refining.  
**አረቅቀው፡** }



*Compound Aorist.*

| 3d pers. masc.                    | SINGULAR.     |                                     | PLURAL.        |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>አርቋል:</b> and<br><b>አርቅቋል:</b> | } he refines. | <b>አርቀዋል:</b> and<br><b>አርቅቀዋል:</b> | } they refine. |

*Compound Preterite.*

|                                         |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>አርቆ:</b> ነበረ: and <b>አርቅቆ:</b> ነበረ:: | <b>አርቀው:</b> ነበሩ: and <b>አርቅቀው:</b> ነበሩ:: |
| he refined.                             | they refined.                             |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                                      |         |                                            |
|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------------|
| Masc. <b>አረቅ:</b> and <b>አርቅቅ:</b> } | do thou | <b>አረቁ:</b> and <b>አርቅቁ:</b> do ye refine. |
| Fem. <b>አረቁ:</b> and <b>አርቅቁ:</b> }  | refine. |                                            |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማርቅቅ:** to refine, the refining, rarefaction.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* **አርቃቂ:** a refiner.

*Rel. Perf.* **ያረቀቀ:** he who refined.

*Pres.* **ምሳያረቅ:** he who refines.

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive or Objective Voice.*

**ተለቀቀ:** He was dismissed.

This conjugation has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood. Besides this, it is regularly conjugated, after the manner of the Fourth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verbs.

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Intensive Voice.*

**አለቀቀ:** He yawned. **አሳደደ:** He persecuted.

Both in nature and form, this conjugation resembles the Fifth of the Perfect Triliteral Verb. It preserves gemination in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Perfect Participle. In the other Moods and Tenses, it is contracted.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| 3d pers. masc.              | SINGULAR. |                               | PLURAL. |
|-----------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|---------|
| <b>አሳደደ:</b> he persecuted. |           | <b>አሳደደ:</b> they persecuted. |         |

*Present and Future.*

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ያሳደድ:</b> he persecutes. | <b>ያሳደሉ:</b> they persecute. |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|



## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

**ያሳደ:**

PLURAL.

| **ያሳደ:**

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

**አሳደ:** he persecuting.| **አሳደው:** they persecuting.*Compound Aorist.***አሳደዋል:** he persecutes.| **አሳደዋል:** they persecute.*Compound Preterite.***አሳደ: ነበረ:** he persecuted.| **አሳደው: ነበረ:** they persecuted.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሳደድ:** } do thou perse-Fem. **አሳደጅ:** } cute.| **አሳደዱ:** do ye persecute.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማሳደድ:** to persecute, the persecuting, persecution.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* **አሳደጅ:** a persecutor.*Rel. Perf.* **ያሳደደ:** he who persecuted.*Present,* **ዋሳደደ:** he who persecutes.

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intensive Voice.***ተሳደደ:** He was persecuted, habitually persecuted.

This form is conjugated after the Sixth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb; has no peculiar Subjunctive; and geminates and contracts after the third form of this class.

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስመረረ:** He embittered.

Corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verb, and is conjugated like the first form of this class.

## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አንሸተተ:** He cheated.

A peculiar form, of which, as we have not hitherto had a similar one, we give here an outline.



## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite Regular.*3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.  
**አንሳተተ**: he cheated.PLURAL.  
**አንሳተቱ**: they cheated.*Present and Future.***ያንሳታል**: he cheats.**ያንሳታሉ**: they cheat.

## 2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

**ያንሳት**:**ያንሳቱ**:

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

3d pers. masc.

**አንሳቱ**: he cheating.

## 4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

**አንሳተው**: they cheating.*Compound Aorist.***አንሳትዋል**: he cheats.**አንሳትዋሉ**: they cheat.*Compound Perfect.***አንሳቱ**: ነበረ: he cheated.**አንሳተው**: ነበሩ: they cheated.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አንሳትት**: } do thou cheat.  
Fem. **አንሳትኛ**: } **አንሳትቱ**: do ye cheat.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማንሳትት**: to cheat, the cheating.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **አንሳታኛ**: a cheater.*Rel. Perf.* **ያንሳተተ**: he who cheated.*Present*, **የሚያንሳት**: he who cheats.

## H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተንሳተተ**: He was cheated.

This is the Passive form of the preceding derivation; and, in gemination, is regulated by the Third Conjugation of this class.

## I. K. NINTH AND TENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Reflective Voice.***አንጠራራ**: and **ተንጠራራ**: He stretched himself.

The peculiarity of these two forms, the power of which seems to be the same, consists in the length of both the geminating letters. On account of their length, they cannot be contracted. They assume, therefore, no Subjunctive form; and the Geminants retain their length, except in the



Constructive, which retains the last radical short, and enters a **ṭ**: which servile, also, is as a paragoge added in the Infinitive; thus:

## SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

| SINGULAR.                                       | PLURAL.                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>አንጠራር፥</b> { he stretching him-<br>self, &c. | <b>አንጠራር፥</b> { they stretching<br>themselves, &c. |

## INFINITIVE.

**ማንጠራራ፥** the stretching, to stretch, oneself.

## III. THIRD CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Geminants whose first radical is **አ**::

This class numbers only a few Verbs. They combine the imperfections of contraction in the beginning and at the end, *i.e.* the imperfections of both the preceding classes. For an exhibition, we select the Verbs **አዘዘ**: "he commanded," and **አዐዐዐ**: "it was painful."

This class has but four Conjugations; the first of which is Intransitive or Active; the second, Objective, Intransitive, or Reflective; the third, Causative; and the fourth, Intensive.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

**አዘዘ**: He commanded.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| 3d pers. masc.             | SINGULAR. | PLURAL.                      |
|----------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| <b>አዘዘ</b> : he commanded. |           | <b>አዘዙ</b> : they commanded. |

*Present and Future.*

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>ያዘል</b> : he commands. | <b>ያዘሉ</b> : they command. |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 3d pers. masc. | 2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT. |
|----------------|-----------------------|

|             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| <b>ያዘ</b> : | <b>ያዘ</b> : |
|-------------|-------------|

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 3d pers. masc. | 3. SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|----------------|-----------------|

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>ይዘዝ</b> : may he command. | <b>ይዘዙ</b> : may they command. |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|

## 4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

|                                           |                               |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>አዘ</b> : he commanding.    | <b>አዘው</b> : they commanding. |
| .. .. fem. <b>አዛ</b> : she commanding.    |                               |
| 2d .. masc. <b>አዘህ</b> : thou commanding. | <b>አዛኙህ</b> : you commanding. |
| .. .. fem. <b>አዘሽ</b> :                   |                               |
| .. .. hon. 1. <b>አዘው</b> :                | } you commanding.             |
| .. .. hon. 2. <b>አዛኙህ</b> :               |                               |
| 1st.. com. <b>አዜ</b> : I commanding.      | <b>አዘን</b> : we commanding.   |



*Compound Aorist.*

|                                    |                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>አዝዋል:</b> he        | } commands.        | <b>አዝዋል:</b> they command. |
| .. .. fem. <b>አዛለች:</b> she        |                    |                            |
| 2d .. masc. <b>አዛሃል:</b>           | } thou commandest. | <b>አዛችኋል:</b> you command. |
| .. .. fem. <b>አዛሻል:</b>            |                    |                            |
| .. .. hon. 1. <b>አዝዋል:</b>         | } you command.     |                            |
| .. .. hon. 2. <b>አዛችኋል:</b>        |                    |                            |
| 1st.. com. <b>አዛለሁ:</b> I command. |                    | <b>አዘናል:</b> we command.   |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                   |                    |                            |
|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Masc. <b>አዘዝ:</b> | } do thou command. | <b>አዘዙ:</b> do ye command. |
| Fem. <b>አዘዟ:</b>  |                    |                            |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማዘዝ:** to command, the commanding, command.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* **አዛዟ:** one who commands, a commander.

*Rel. Pret.* **ያዘዘ:** he who commanded.

*Present,* **የሚያዝ:** he who commands.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive.*

**ተመመ:** He felt pain, was sick. **ተዘዘ:** He was commanded, he obeyed.

In this conjugation, the **ተ:** is retained throughout; and contraction of the second and third radical takes place in the Constructive Mood only. No Subjunctive. Second radical is treated as in all the Objective forms.

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.*

**አሳመመ:** He made sick, gave or caused pain.

The first radical **አ:**, absorbed in the Preformative **ሳ:**, undergoes no further change. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Indicative, Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative, Present, and Constructive; and both Gemination and Contraction in the Contingent. Respecting the latter, we think, that when it stands by itself, it is geminated; but when it receives any addition at the beginning or at the end, it is contracted.



## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.*

**አስተመመ**; He nursed sick persons.

This conjugation corresponds with the Tenth of the Perfect Triliterals, and with the Fourth of the First Class of Imperfect Triliterals. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood.

3. *Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs.*

Biliteral Verbs are, in the Amharic Language, exceedingly numerous; owing especially, as will be seen hereafter, to the many contractions from Triliteral Verbs, by which they became Biliterals. In treating on these Verbs, it will be best to divide them into four distinct classes; namely, (a) Perfect; (b) Imperfect; (c) Contracted; (d) Irregular and Anomalous Biliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—*Perfect Biliterals.*

These are Verbs which have the two radical letters in the first form, do not begin with any vowel letter, and are conjugated regularly. They have this resemblance to some of the Contracted forms, that the paragogic **ተ**: is added to most of its Infinitives, and enters into the Constructives. They are conjugated through Eight different Species or Conjugations.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active, and Transitive Voice.*

**ገዘ**: He flourished.    **ደገ**: Was great.    **ሰጠ**: He gave.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.     |                        | PLURAL.                 |
|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>ሰጠ</b> : he gave.   | <b>ሰጡ</b> : they gave.  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ሰጠች</b> : she gave. |                         |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>ሰጠህ</b> :           | <b>ሰጣችሁ</b> : you gave. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ሰጠሽ</b> :           |                         |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ሰጡ</b> :            | } you gave.             |
| .. .. 2.      | <b>ሰጣችሁ</b> :          |                         |
| 1st .. com.   | <b>ሰጠሁ</b> : I gave.   | <b>ሰጠን</b> : we gave.   |



*Present and Future.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|               |         |                   |
|---------------|---------|-------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | ይሰጣል:   | he gives.         |
| .. .. fem.    | ትሰጣለች:  | she gives.        |
| 2d .. masc.   | ትሰጣለህ:  | } thou<br>givest. |
| .. .. fem.    | ትሰጧለሽ:  |                   |
| .. .. hon. 1. | ይሰጣሉ:   | } you<br>give.    |
| .. .. . 2.    | ትሰጣላችሁ: |                   |
| 1st .. com.   | እሰጣለሁ:  | I give.           |

ይሰጣሉ: they give.

ትሰጣላችሁ: you give.

እንሰጣለን: we give.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

|               |       |           |
|---------------|-------|-----------|
| 3d p. masc.   | ይሰጥ:  | fem. ትሰጥ: |
| 2d .. masc.   | ትሰጥ:  | fem. ትሰጭ: |
| .. .. hon. 1. | ይሰጡ:  | 2. ትሰጡ:   |
| 1st .. .      | እሰጥ:: |           |

ይሰጡ:

ትሰጡ:

እንሰጥ::

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

|               |      |                        |
|---------------|------|------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | ይስጥ: | may he give.           |
| .. .. fem.    | ትስጥ: | may she give.          |
| 2d .. masc.   | ትስጥ: | } mayest thou<br>give. |
| .. .. fem.    | ትስጭ: |                        |
| .. .. hon. 1. | ይስጡ: | } may you<br>give.     |
| .. .. . 2.    | ትስጡ: |                        |
| 1st .. com.   | እስጥ: | may I give.            |

ይስጡ: may they give.

ትስጡ: may you give.

እንስጥ: may we give.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE with ት:

|               |        |                   |
|---------------|--------|-------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | ሰጥቶ:   | he giving.        |
| .. .. fem.    | ሰጥታ:   | she giving.       |
| 2d .. masc.   | ሰጥተህ:  | } thou<br>giving. |
| .. .. fem.    | ሰጥተሽ:  |                   |
| .. .. hon. 1. | ሰጥተው:  | } you<br>giving.  |
| .. .. . 2.    | ሰጥታችሁ: |                   |
| 1st .. com.   | ሰጥቼ:   | I giving.         |

ሰጥተው: they giving.

ሰጥታችሁ: you giving.

ሰጥተን: we giving.

*Compound Aorist.*

|               |         |                   |
|---------------|---------|-------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | ሰጥቱዋል:  | he gives.         |
| .. .. fem.    | ሰጥታለች:  | she gives.        |
| 2d .. masc.   | ሰጥተሃል:  | } thou<br>givest. |
| .. .. fem.    | ሰጥተሻል:  |                   |
| .. .. hon. 1. | ሰጥተዋል:  | } you<br>give.    |
| .. .. . 2.    | ሰጥታችኋል: |                   |
| 1st .. com.   | ሰጥቻለሁ:  | I give.           |

ሰጥተዋል: they give.

ሰጥታችኋል: you give.

ሰጥተኛል: we give.



*Simple Form without ተ: (rare).*

| SINGULAR.   |                      | PLURAL.                |
|-------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | ድኅ: he being great.  | ድገው: they being great. |
| ... fem.    | ድጋ: she being great. |                        |
| 2d .. masc. | ድገህ: } thou being    | ድጋችሁ: you being great. |
| ... fem.    | ድገሽ: } great.        |                        |
| ... hon. 1. | ድገው: } you being     |                        |
| ... .. 2.   | ድጋችሁ: } great.       |                        |
| 1st.. com.  | ድጌ: I being great.   | ድገን: we being great.   |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|       |           |                     |
|-------|-----------|---------------------|
| Masc. | ሰጥ: ሰጥ: } | ሰጡ: ሰጡ: do ye give. |
| Fem.  | ሰጩ: ሰጩ: } |                     |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

መስጠት: to give, the giving. መጠጥ: to drink, the drinking.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* ሰጪ: and ሰጪ: a giver.

*Rel. Pret.* የሰጠ: he who gave.

*Pres.* የሚሰጥ: he who gives.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.*

አገነ: He beautified, praised. አደገ: He grew.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.   |                  | PLURAL.          |
|-------------|------------------|------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | አደገ: he grew.    | አደጉ: they grew.  |
| ... fem.    | አደገች: she grew.  |                  |
| 2d .. masc. | አደግህ: } thou     | አደጋችሁ: you grew. |
| ... fem.    | አደግሽ: } grewest. |                  |
| ... hon. 1. | አደጉ: } you       |                  |
| ... .. 2.   | አደጋችሁ: } grew.   |                  |
| 1st.. com.  | አደግሁ: I grew.    | አደግነ: we grew.   |

3d pers. masc.

*Present and Future.*

የደጋል: he grows, &c. | የደጋሉ: they grow.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

የደግ: &c. | የደጉ: &c.

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.



4. CONSTRUCTIVE, with ት::

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አበጀት: he preparing. | አበጀተው: they preparing.

Without ት::

አድጎ: he growing. | አድገው: they growing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አድግ: } do thou grow. | አድጉ: do ye grow.  
Fem. አድጊ: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ማድግ: to grow, the growth.

ማበጀት: to prepare, the preparing, preparation.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, አደገ: one who grows. አጣጭ: one who irrigates.

Rel. Pret. ያደገ: he who grew.

Pres. የሚያደግ: he who grows.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Objective Voice.*

ተሰጠ: He was given.

This has nothing peculiar. It is treated like other objective forms, and has the paragogic ት: uniformly.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive or Causative Voice.*

አስገነ: He beautified, glorified.

Has the paragogic ት::

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አስገነ: he beautified. | አስገኑ: they beautified.

*Present and Future.*

ያስገድ: he beautifies. | ያስገድሉ: they beautify.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያስገን: | ያስገኑ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያስግን: may he beautify. | ያስግኑ: may they beautify.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አስገንት: he beautifying. | አስገንተው: they beautify.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስግን: } do thou beautify. | አስግኑ: do ye beautify.  
Fem. አስግን: }



## 6. INFINITIVE.

ማስገነት: to beautify, beautifying.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, አስገኝ: beautifier.

Rel. Pret. ያስገነ: he who beautified.

Present, የሚያስገን: he who beautifies.

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive or Causative Voice.*

አሳደገ: He caused to grow, trained, reared, educated.

Differs only in form from the preceding conjugations. It has no paragogic ት:, and is conjugated like አሳመነ: in the Third Conjugation of the first class of Imperfect Triliteral Verbs.

F. G. H. The Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Conjugations are treated like Triliteral Geminants.

## II. SECOND CLASS.

*Imperfect Biliterals, which have አ: for the first Radical Letter.*

The first radical አ: undergoes the usual changes, as shown in the preceding conjugations. The paragogic ት: prevails through all the conjugations of this class, which contains but few verbs. The verb አዋ: "He saw," containing all the different forms of Conjugations of this class, we have selected for exhibition.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Subjective, Intransitive, and Transitive Voice.*

አዋ: He saw.

## I. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

አዋ: he saw, &amp;c., like ሰጠ::

*Present and Future.*

| SINGULAR.     |                     | PLURAL.         |
|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | የዋል: he sees.       | የዋሉ: they see.  |
| .. .. fem.    | ተዋለች: she sees.     |                 |
| .. .. masc.   | ተዋለህ: } thou seest. | ተዋለችህ: you see. |
| .. .. fem.    | ተዋለሽ: }             |                 |
| .. .. hon. 1. | የዋሉ: }              | }               |
| .. .. hon. 2. | ተዋለችሁ: }            |                 |
| 1st.. com.    | አዋለሁ: I see.        | አናዋለን: we see.  |



## 2. CONTINGENT.

| SINGULAR.     |                            | PLURAL.     |
|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>የደ:</b> fem. <b>ተደ:</b> | <b>የዩ::</b> |
| 2d .. masc.   | <b>ተደ:</b> fem. <b>ተዩ:</b> | <b>ተዩ:</b>  |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>የዩ:</b> 2. <b>ተዩ:</b>   |             |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>አደ:</b>                 | <b>አናደ:</b> |

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

|               |                               |                          |
|---------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>ደደ:</b> may he see.        | <b>ደዩ:</b> may they see. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ተደ:</b> may she see.       |                          |
| 2d p. masc.   | <b>ተደ:</b> }                  | <b>ተዩ:</b> may you see.  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ተዩ:</b> } mayest thou see. |                          |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>ደዩ:</b> }                  |                          |
| .. .. .. 2.   | <b>ተዩ:</b> } may you see.     |                          |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>አደ:</b> may I see.         | <b>አንደ:</b> may we see.  |

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*

|               |                             |                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>አደተ:</b> he seeing.      | <b>አደተው:</b> they seeing. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>አደተ:</b> she seeing.     |                           |
| 2d p. masc.   | <b>አደተህ:</b> }              | <b>አደተኩ:</b> you seeing.  |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>አደተሽ:</b> } thou seeing. |                           |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>አደተው:</b> }              |                           |
| .. .. .. 2.   | <b>አደተኩ:</b> } you seeing.  |                           |
| 1st.. com.    | <b>አደኛ:</b> I seeing.       | <b>አደተን:</b> we seeing.   |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|       |                           |                       |
|-------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Masc. | <b>አደ:</b> }              | <b>አዩ:</b> do ye see. |
| Fem.  | <b>አዩ:</b> } do thou see. |                       |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማየት:** the seeing, sight, aspect.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple, None.*

*Relative Preterite, የዩ:* he who saw.

*Present, የሚደደ:* he who sees.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, or Intransitive Voice.*

**ተዩ:** He was seen, appeared.



## 1. INDICATIVE.

| SINGULAR.           |                                      | Preterite. | PLURAL.                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.         | <b>ተዋ</b> : he was seen.             |            | <b>ተዋ</b> : they were seen.  |
| .. .. fem.          | <b>ተዋኝ</b> : she was seen.           |            |                              |
| 2d p. masc.         | <b>ተዋህ</b> :                         |            | <b>ተዋኝሁ</b> :                |
| .. .. fem.          | <b>ተዋሽ</b> :                         |            |                              |
| .. .. hon. 1.       | <b>ተዋ</b> :                          |            |                              |
| .. .. 2.            | <b>ተዋኝሁ</b> :                        |            |                              |
| 1st.. com.          | <b>ተዋሁ</b> :                         |            | <b>ተዋኝ</b> :                 |
| Present and Future. |                                      |            |                              |
| 3d p. masc.         | <b>ይተዋል</b> : he is seen.            |            | <b>ይተዋሉ</b> : they are seen. |
| .. .. fem.          | <b>ትተዋልኝ</b> : { she is seen,<br>&c. |            |                              |

## 2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ይተደ**: fem. **ትተደ**: | **ይተደ**:

## 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ተደተ**: he appearing, &c. | **ተደተው**: they appearing.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ተደ**: } do thou appear. | **ተደ**: do ye appear.  
Fem. **ተደ**:

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መተዋት**: to be seen, the appearing, appearance.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple, None.*

*Relative Preterite, Pተዋ*: he who appeared.

*Present, Pመተደ*: he who appears.

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.*

**አሳዋ**: He made to be seen, caused to appear, showed.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

| SINGULAR.     |                                | Preterite. | PLURAL.                   |
|---------------|--------------------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>አሳዋ</b> : he showed.        |            | <b>አሳዋ</b> : they showed. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>አሳዋኝ</b> : she showed.      |            |                           |
| 2d p. masc.   | <b>አሳዋህ</b> : f. <b>አሳዋሽ</b> : |            | <b>አሳዋኝሁ</b> :            |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>አሳዋ</b> : 2. <b>አሳዋኝሁ</b> : |            |                           |
| .. .. com.    | <b>አሳዋሁ</b> :                  |            | <b>አሳዋኝ</b> :             |



*Present and Future.*

| SINGULAR.     |                          | PLURAL.                 |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3d p. masc.   | <b>የሳያል:</b> he shows.   | <b>የሳያሉ:</b> they show. |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ተሳያለች:</b> she shows. |                         |
| 2d p. masc.   | <b>ተሳያለህ:</b>            | <b>ተሳያላችሁ:</b>          |
| .. .. fem.    | <b>ተሳያለሽ:</b>            |                         |
| .. .. hon. 1. | <b>የሳያሉ:</b>             |                         |
| .. .. 2.      | <b>ተሳያላችሁ:</b>           |                         |
| 1st. com.     | <b>አሳያለሁ:</b>            | <b>አናሳያለን:</b>          |

3d pers. masc.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

**የሳይ:** fem. **ተሳይ:** &c.| **የሳይ:** &c.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **የሰይ:** may he show.| **የሰይ:** &c... .. fem. **ተሰይ:** &c. may she show

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **አሳይቶ:** he showing.| **አሳይተው:**.. .. fem. **አሳይታ:** she showing.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሰይ:** } do thou show.Fem. **አሰይ:** }| **አሰይ:** do ye show.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማሳየት:** To show, the showing.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* None.*Rel. Pret.* **የሳየ:** he who showed.*Pres.* **የሚሳይ:** he who shows.

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***አስታየ:** He made to be seen, brought into sight.

## 1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

**አስታየ:** brought into sight.

PLURAL.

| **አስታዩ:** &c.**አስታዩ:** &c., like the preceding.*Present and Future.***የስታያል:** he brings into sight.| **የስታያሉ:** they bring into sight.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

**የስታይ:**fem. **ተስታይ:** &c.| **የስታይ:** &c.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.



## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

| SINGULAR.      |                                        | PLURAL.                                     |
|----------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 3d pers. masc. | <b>አስተይቱ</b> : he bringing into sight. | <b>አስተይተው</b> : { they bringing into sight. |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                     |               |                                       |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| Masc. <b>አስተይ</b> : | do thou bring | <b>አስተይ</b> : do ye bring into sight. |
| Fem. <b>አስተይ</b> :  | into sight.   |                                       |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማስተየት**: to bring into sight.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, None.

*Rel. Pret.* **ያስተየ**: he who brought into sight.

*Pres.* **የሚያስተይ**: he who brings into sight.

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal Voice.*

**ተያየ**: He was with another in reciprocal sight; Looked at each other.

As this is not used in our languages in the Singular, we shall omit the translation, and give merely the requisite forms in Amharic.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| 3d pers. masc. | SINGULAR.          | PLURAL.      |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| <b>ተያየ</b> :   | fem. <b>ተያየች</b> : | <b>ተያየ</b> : |

*Present and Future.*

|                |                      |                |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <b>ይተያያል</b> : | fem. <b>ትተያያልች</b> : | <b>ይተያያሉ</b> : |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|

## 2. CONTINGENT.

|               |                    |               |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <b>ይተያይ</b> : | fem. <b>ትተያይ</b> : | <b>ይተያዩ</b> : |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

|               |                    |                |
|---------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <b>ተያይት</b> : | fem. <b>ተያይት</b> : | <b>ተያይተው</b> : |
|---------------|--------------------|----------------|

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                    |                   |              |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| Masc. <b>ተያይ</b> : | fem. <b>ተያዩ</b> : | <b>ተያዩ</b> : |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መተያየት**: the being in sight of each other; relation to each other.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*.—None.

*Rel. Pret.* **የተያየ**:

*Pres.* **የሚተያይ**:



## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative and Reciprocalive.*

**አስተያየ**: He made look at each other; placed over against each other.

Is not, in form, different from the preceding; save the prefixing of **አስ**: and the changes which that undergoes; and; that in the Imperative it has **አስተያይ**:

III. THIRD CLASS.—*Contracted Biliterals.*

This very numerous class is derived from Trilaterals; which, in the Ethiopic and Tigrê Languages, have either a Vowel letter **አ**: **ዐ**: **የ**: or **ወ**:, or a Guttural **ሀ**: **ሐ**: **ኀ**: or **ኸ**: contracted with the preceding letter. The letter to which their vowel has thus been joined has been made long; whilst the verb itself has become a biliteral one. In some few cases of Quadrilaterals, two contractions have been made; and we have therefore Biliteral Verbs of two long radicals. Verbs contracted from Trilaterals differ, as to whether the lost letter stood formerly in the middle or at the end; and this materially determines their form of conjugation.

(aa.) Verbs with an absorbed Guttural at the end.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Active Voice.*

**ገገ**: *intrs.* He entered (went in). Eth. **ገበአ**:

The second radical is always long; except in the Constructive Mood, and in the Simple Participle.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.   |                           | FLURAL.                    |
|-------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>ገገ</b> : he went in.   | <b>ገበ</b> : they went in.  |
| ... fem.    | <b>ገገኛ</b> : she went in. |                            |
| 2d .. masc. | <b>ገገህ</b> :              | <b>ገገኛሁ</b> : you went in. |
| ... fem.    | <b>ገገሽ</b> :              |                            |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>ገበ</b> :               | } you went in.             |
| ... 2.      | <b>ገገኛሁ</b> :             |                            |
| 1st..       | <b>ገገሁ</b> : I went in.   | <b>ገገነ</b> : we went in.   |

3d pers. masc.

*Present and Future.*

**ይገገል**: he goes in, &c. | **ይገገሉ**: they go in, &c.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

**ይገገ**: fem. **ትገገ**: | **ይገቡ**:



## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

| SINGULAR.   |                             | PLURAL.                      |
|-------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>ደግገ</b> : may he go in.  | <b>ደግቡ</b> : may they go in. |
| ... fem.    | <b>ትግገ</b> : may she go in. |                              |
| 2d p. masc. | <b>ትግገ</b> : } mayest thou  | <b>ትግቡ</b> : may you go in.  |
| ... fem.    | <b>ትግቢ</b> : } go in.       |                              |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>ደግቡ</b> : } may you go   |                              |
| ... 2.      | <b>ትግቡ</b> : } in.          |                              |
| 1st.. com.  | <b>እግገ</b> : may I go in.   | <b>እንግገ</b> : may we go in.  |

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

|            |                                  |                              |
|------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3d p. m.   | <b>ገብቶ</b> : he entering.        | <b>ገብተው</b> : they entering. |
| ... f.     | <b>ገብታ</b> : she entering.       |                              |
| 2d .. m.   | <b>ገብተህ</b> : fem. <b>ገብተሽ</b> : | <b>ገብታችሁ</b> :               |
| .. hon. 1. | <b>ገብተው</b> : 2. <b>ገብታችሁ</b> :  |                              |
| 1st com.   | <b>ገብቺ</b> :                     | <b>ገብተን</b> :                |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                   |                  |                          |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| Masc. <b>ግገ</b> : | } do thou enter. | <b>ግቡ</b> : do ye enter. |
| Fem. <b>ግቢ</b> :  |                  |                          |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መግገት** : to go in, the going in, the entrance.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

|                   |                                                                   |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Simple,</i>    | <b>ገቢ</b> : <i>intrs.</i> one who enters in.                      |
|                   | <b>ግቢ</b> : that which is entered into, <i>i.e.</i> the interior. |
| <i>Rel. Pret.</i> | <b>ጸገገ</b> : he who entered.                                      |
| <i>Pres.</i>      | <b>ጸግግገ</b> : he who enters.                                      |

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.*

**እገገ** : He made go in, introduced.—(Is quite regular.)

## 1. INDICATIVE.

|                |                |                   |                               |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 3d pers. masc. | SINGULAR.      | <i>Preterite.</i> | PLURAL.                       |
| <b>እገገ</b> :   | he introduced. |                   | <b>እገቡ</b> : they introduced. |

*Present and Future.*

|               |                |  |               |
|---------------|----------------|--|---------------|
| <b>ደገገል</b> : | he introduces. |  | <b>ደገገሉ</b> : |
|---------------|----------------|--|---------------|

## 2. CONTINGENT.

|              |                   |  |              |
|--------------|-------------------|--|--------------|
| <b>ደገገ</b> : | fem. <b>ታገገ</b> : |  | <b>ደገቡ</b> : |
|--------------|-------------------|--|--------------|



## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

**ያግግ**: may he introduce. | **ያግቡ**: may they introduce.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

**አግብቶ**: he introducing. | **አግብተው**: they introducing.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|       |              |                      |  |              |                  |
|-------|--------------|----------------------|--|--------------|------------------|
| Masc. | <b>አግግ</b> : | } do thou introduce. |  | <b>አግቡ</b> : | do ye introduce. |
| Fem.  | <b>አግቢ</b> : |                      |  |              |                  |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**ማግግት**: the introducing, introduction.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **አጋቢ**: one who introduces.*Rel. Perf.* **ያገገ**: he who introduced.*Pres.* **የማያገግ**: he who introduces.

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive.***ተገገ**: *impersonal*. It was proper, It belonged.

Is treated like other Passives—has no Subjunctive.

The Constructive has **ተገብቶ**: and in other respects it is like **ገገ**:

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አጋገ**: He married.The **ገ**: is long throughout; and the Preformative **አ**: is treated as in all the Transitive forms.

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive of the preceding.***ተጋገ**: Was married.

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስገገ**: He caused to go in; introduced.*Subjunctive*, **ያስገግ**:: | *Imperative*, **አስግግ**::*Constructive*, **አስገብቶ**:: | *Infinitive*, **ማስገገት**::

All the other Forms quite regular.



## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.*

**נפנפ:** (from **נפ:** it sufficed) was quite sufficient.

A geminating form. The long middle letter is retained throughout, and the rest treated like **נל::**

---

## H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Reiterative.*

**הלהל:** He frequently went in, often cohabited, behaved properly.

This conjugation is like a transitive of the preceding one: the long penultima is retained throughout, and the rest treated like **הלל::**

---

## I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

**חזזז:** He comforted, strengthened.

The two middle letters remain long; **ח:** is treated as in all Transitive forms: there is no Subjunctive; and as to the rest, this conjugation is like the others of this class.

---

## K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intense Passive.*

**תזזז:** Was comforted.

Is treated like other Passives, retains the long penultima, and has the other peculiarities of this class.

*(bb.) Forms with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle.*

In these forms, the original guttural having been in the middle, on its absorption, the first radical has become long. It retains, however, its length only in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, and the Infinitive Moods of the Active; and through the whole of the Passive forms, except the Constructive. It has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive; but uses, as is generally done in such cases, the Contingent for the purpose. It has, besides, the paragogic **ת:** extremely seldom; because it appears that letter is intended for compensation for final absorbed letters, of which there are none in this class.

This class has seven different Conjugations.

---



## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ማለ:** (Eth. መሐለ:) He swore, took an oath.

## 1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

*Preterite.*

## SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ማለ:** he swore.. . . f. **ማለች:** she swore.2d . . m. **ማለህ:** fem. **ማለሽ:**. . hon. 1. **ማለ:** 2. **ማለችሁ:**1st com. **ማለሁ:**

## PLURAL.

**ማለሉ:** they swore.**ማለችሁ:****ማለኑ:***Present and Future.*3d p. m. **ይምላል:** he swears. | **ይምላሉ:** they swear.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ይምል:** fem. **ትምል:** | **ይምሉ::**

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m. **ምላ:** he swearing.**ምለው:**. . . f. **ምላ:** she swearing.2d . . m. **ምላህ:** fem. **ምላሽ:****ምላችሁ:**. . hon 1. **ምለው:** 2. **ምላችሁ:**1st com. **ምዬ:****ምለን:**

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                  |                  |                         |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| Masc. <b>ማል:</b> | } do thou swear. | <b>ማሉ:</b> do ye swear. |
| Fem. <b>ማይ:</b>  |                  |                         |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መማል:** to swear, the swearing.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* **ማይ:** one who swears.*Rel. Pret.* **ምማለ:** he who swore.*Pres.* **ምማል:** he who swears.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አማለ:** He made swear.*Contingent,* **ያምል::***Imperative,* **አምል:***Constructive,* **አምላ::***Infinitive,* **ማማል::**

(See the above remarks.)



## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተማለ:** He was sworn.

|                            |  |                          |
|----------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደማለ::</b>   |  | Imperative, <b>ተማለ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተምሎ::</b> |  | Infinitive, <b>መማለ::</b> |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive (Causative) Voice.***አስማለ:** He made swear.

|                             |  |                           |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደስምለ::</b>   |  | Imperative, <b>አስማለ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>አስምሎ::</b> |  | Infinitive, <b>ማስማለ::</b> |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Frequentative (Intensive) Voice.***አጣጣለ:** Distributed by casting (lots). Radix, **ጣለ:** He cast.

|                             |  |                           |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደጣፕለ::</b>   |  | Imperative, <b>አጣጣለ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>አጣፕሎ::</b> |  | Infinitive, <b>ማጣጣለ::</b> |

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal Voice.***ተማማለ:** Mutually swore, conspired.

|                             |  |                           |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደማማለ::</b>   |  | Imperative, <b>ተማማለ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>ተማምሎ::</b> |  | Infinitive, <b>መማማለ:</b>  |

## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተማለለ::** He adjured, earnestly entreated.

|                            |  |                           |
|----------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደማለለ::</b>  |  | Imperative, <b>ተማለለ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተማሎ::</b> |  | Infinitive, <b>መማለለ::</b> |

(cc.) *Forms with an Absorbed P: in the Middle.*

These forms are determined by the rule laid down, Part I. Ch. VII. 4. E. On the absorption of the **P:** its corresponding vowel *é* has been joined to the first radical; which, whenever it is shortened, changes *é* into a short *i*; but when lengthened (as in the Fourth Conjugation), the first radical is put into the Fourth Order, and **P:** is restored. No paragogic **ጥ:** is in this class.

We take the two Verbs, **ሸጠ:** He sold, and **ሔደ:** He went.



## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ሸጠ:** *Active*, He sold.      Ethiopic, **ሠጀጠ:**

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

## SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ሸጠ:** he sold.

... fem. **ሸጠች:** she sold.

2d .. masc. **ሸጥህ:** fem. **ሸጥሽ:**

... hon. 1. **ሸጡ:** 2. **ሸጧችሁ:**

1st.. com. **ሸጥሁ:**

## PLURAL.

**ሸጡ:** they sold.

**ሸጧችሁ:**

**ሸጥኑ:**

*Present and Future.*

3d p. masc. **ሠሸጧል:** he sells.

**ሠሸጧሉ:** they sell.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ሠሸጥ:** fem. **ትሸጥ:**

**ሠሸጡ:**

2d .. **ትሸጥ:** fem. **ትሸጭ:**

**ትሸጡ:**

... hon. 1. **ሠሸጡ:** 2. **ትሸጡ:**

1st .. com. **ኧሸጥ:**

**ኧሸጡ:**

3d pers. masc.

**ሠሸጥ:** may he sell.

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

**ሠሸጡ:** may they sell.

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ሸጦ:** he selling.

**ሸጠው:**

... fem. **ሸጧ:** she selling.

2d .. masc. **ሸጠህ:** fem. **ሸጠሽ:**

**ሸጧችሁ:**

... hon. 1. **ሸጠው:**

... .. 2. **ሸጧችሁ:**

1st.. com. **ሸጧሁ:**

**ሸጠን:**

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ሸጥ:** } do thou sell.  
Fem. **ሸጭ:** }

**ሸጡ:** do ye sell.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መሸጥ:** to sell, the selling, sale.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple (a.) Act.* **ሸጧጭ:** one who sells, a seller.

(b.) **ሸጧጭ:** a thing sold, merchandize.

*Rel. Preterite,* **የሸጠ:** he who sold.

*Present,* **የሠሸጥ:** he who sells.



## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አሐደ:** He made go, drove the threshing ox.

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያሐድ:</b>    | Imperative, <b>አሐድ:</b>  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያሐድ:</b>   | Infinitive, <b>ማሐድ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አሐደ::</b> |                          |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተሺጠ:** He was sold.

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደሺጥ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>ተሺጥ:</b>  |
| No Subjunctive.           | Infinitive, <b>መሺጥ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>ተሺጦ:</b> |                          |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተሻየጠ:** He traded, dealt, carried on commerce.

|                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደሻየጥ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>ተሻየጥ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተሻየጦ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መሻየጥ::</b> |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative (Transitive) Voice.***አስሐደ:** He made to go.

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያስሐድ::</b>   | Imperative, <b>አስሐድ::</b> |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያስሐድ::</b>  | Infinitive, <b>ማስሐድ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አስሐደ::</b> |                           |

(dd.) *Forms with an Absorbed **፬**: in the Middle.*

According to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 5, and 6. the middle letter **፬**: has been absorbed; its vowel *o* attached to the first radical. This is further shortened, in the Subjunctive Constructive and Active Imperative, into <sup>3</sup>u. But in those forms which have long letters, **፬**: is restored. In some of these, it forms diphthongs of the fourth order. Those forms of this class, whose first radical is a diphthong, as **ቀዎዎ**: **ቀላ**: **ቀጣ**: **ከረ**: **ጉደ**., have the Causative form with **አስ**: and the paragogic **ት**::; which the forms with simple *o* have not.



## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***ቆመ** : He stood.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

| SINGULAR.                                  | <i>Preterite.</i> | PLURAL.                 |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>ቆመ</b> : he stood.          |                   | <b>ቆሙ</b> : they stood. |
| .. .. fem. <b>ቆመች</b> : she stood.         |                   |                         |
| 2d .. masc. <b>ቆምህ</b> : fem. <b>ቆምሽ</b> : | <b>ቆማችሁ</b> :     |                         |
| .. .. hon. 1. <b>ቆሙ</b> : 2. <b>ቆማችሁ</b> : |                   |                         |
| 1st.. com. <b>ቆምሁ</b> ::                   | <b>ቆሙን</b> ::     |                         |

## 2. CONTINGENT.

|                                            |                |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>ይቆም</b> : fem. <b>ትቆም</b> : | <b>ይቆሙ</b> :   |
| 2d .. masc. <b>ትቆም</b> : fem. <b>ትቆሙ</b> : | <b>ትቆሙ</b> :   |
| .. .. hon. 1. <b>ይቆሙ</b> : 2. <b>ትቆሙ</b> : |                |
| 1st.. com. <b>ኧቆም</b> ::                   | <b>ኧንቆም</b> :: |

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

|                                        |                               |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>ይቁም</b> : may he stand. | <b>ይቁሙ</b> :: may they stand. |
| .. .. fem. <b>ትቁም</b> : may she stand. |                               |

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

|                                             |                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. <b>ቁም</b> : he standing.        | <b>ቁመው</b> : they standing. |
| .. .. fem. <b>ቁሚ</b> : she standing.        |                             |
| 2d .. masc. <b>ቁመህ</b> : fem. <b>ቁመሽ</b> :  | <b>ቁማችሁ</b> :               |
| .. .. hon. 1. <b>ቁመው</b> : 2. <b>ቁማችሁ</b> : |                             |
| 1st.. com. <b>ቁሚ</b> :                      | <b>ቁሙን</b> ::               |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Masc. <b>ቁም</b> : } stand ! | <b>ቁሙ</b> : do ye stand. |
| Fem. <b>ቁሚ</b> :            |                          |

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መቆም** : to stand, the standing, station, state.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **ቀዋሚ** : one who stands (see Dictionary). **ቁም** : Eth. standing, straightforward.*Rel. Pret.* **ፆቆመ** : he who stood.*Pres.* **ፆሚ ቁም** : he who stands.



## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አቆመ**: He made to stand, erected.

|               |              |                           |
|---------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| Contingent,   | <b>ያቆም</b> : | Imperative, <b>አቁም</b> :  |
| Subjunctive,  | <b>ያቁም</b> : | Infinitive, <b>ማቆም</b> :: |
| Constructive, | <b>አቁሞ</b> : |                           |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተቆመ**: He was erected.—No Subjunctive.

|               |                               |                                            |
|---------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Contingent,   | <b>ይቆም</b> : ( <b>ይቆወም</b> :) | Imperative, <b>ተቆም</b> : ( <b>ተቆወም</b> :)  |
| Constructive, | <b>ተቁሞ</b> ::                 | Infinitive, <b>መቆም</b> :: ( <b>መቆወም</b> :) |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተቆወመ**: He withstood, resisted.

|               |               |                            |
|---------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent,   | <b>ይቆወም</b> : | Imperative, <b>ተቆወም</b> :  |
| Constructive, | <b>ተቆወሞ</b> : | Infinitive, <b>መቆወም</b> :: |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስቀዎ**: He caused to wait.

|               |                |                             |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Contingent,   | <b>ያስቀድ</b> :  | Imperative, <b>አስቀድ</b> :   |
| Subjunctive,  | <b>ያስቀድ</b> :  | Infinitive, <b>ማስቀዎት</b> :: |
| Constructive, | <b>አስቀድቶ</b> : |                             |

## F. G. SIXTH AND SEVENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Intensive Forms.***ተቋቋመ**: and **ተቋቋመ**:: To resist to the end.

|               |                                 |                                           |
|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Contingent,   | <b>ይቋቋም</b> : and <b>ይቋቋም</b> : | Imperative, <b>ተቋቋም</b> : & <b>ተቋቋም</b> : |
|               |                                 | Infinitive, <b>መቋቋም</b> : and             |
| Constructive, | <b>ተቋቋሞ</b> :                   | <b>መቋቋም</b> :                             |



IV. FOURTH CLASS.—*Doubly Imperfect Biliterals.*

These are subdivided into three species :

(aa) Verbs doubly contracted.

(bb) Verbs beginning with **አ**: and terminating in an absorbed guttural.

(cc) Beginning with **የ**: which absorbs a guttural.

(aa) *Doubly Contracted Biliterals.*

These are but few in number ; derived from Quadrilaterals, and flexible through three Conjugations.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive. (Active) Voice.*

**ለለ**: He was loose, lax.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.   |                                | PLURAL.                     |
|-------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>ለለ</b> : he was lax.        | <b>ለለሉ</b> : they were lax. |
| ... fem.    | <b>ለለች</b> : she was lax.      |                             |
| ... masc.   | <b>ለለህ</b> : fem. <b>ለለሽ</b> : | <b>ለለችሁ</b> :               |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>ለለሉ</b> : 2. <b>ለለችሁ</b> :  |                             |
| 1st.. com.  | <b>ለለሁ</b> :                   | <b>ለለኝ</b> :                |

*Present and Future.*

|             |                            |                             |
|-------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>ይለለል</b> : he is lax.   | <b>ይለለሉ</b> : they are lax. |
| ... fem.    | <b>ትለለለች</b> : she is lax. |                             |
| 2d.. masc.  | <b>ትለለለህ</b> :             | <b>ትለለለችሁ</b> :             |
| ... fem.    | <b>ትለለለሽ</b> :             |                             |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>ይለለሉ</b> :              |                             |
| ... .. 2.   | <b>ትለለለችሁ</b> :            |                             |
| 1st.. com.  | <b>ኧለለለሁ</b> :             | <b>ኧንለለለኝ</b> :             |

## 2. CONTINGENT.

|             |                                |               |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>ይለለ</b> : fem. <b>ትለለ</b> : | <b>ይለሉ</b> :  |
| 2d .. ..    | <b>ትለለ</b> : .. <b>ትለይ</b> :   |               |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>ይለሉ</b> : 2. <b>ትለሉ</b> :   | <b>ትለሉ</b> :  |
| 1st.. com.  | <b>ኧለለ</b> :                   | <b>ኧንለለ</b> : |

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.



## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

|             |                     |        |
|-------------|---------------------|--------|
| 3d p. masc. | ላልቶ: he being lax.  | ላልተው:  |
| ... fem.    | ላልታ: she being lax. |        |
| 2d .. masc. | ላልተህ:               | ላልታችሁ: |
| ... fem.    | ላልተሽ:               |        |
| ... hon. 1. | ላልተው:               |        |
| ... .. 2.   | ላልታችሁ:              |        |
| 1st.. com.  | ላልቺ:                | ላልተን:  |

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

|           |                  |                   |
|-----------|------------------|-------------------|
| Masc. ላላ: | fem. ላይ: be lax. | ላሉ: do ye be lax. |
|-----------|------------------|-------------------|

## 6. INFINITIVE.

መላላት: to be loose, lax.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

|                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Simple,</i>    | None.                |
| <i>Rel. Pret.</i> | ዋላላ: he who was lax. |
| <i>Pres.</i>      | ዋሚላላ: he who is lax. |

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.*

ክላላ: To loosen, relax.

|                      |       |  |                    |        |
|----------------------|-------|--|--------------------|--------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | ዋላላ:  |  | <i>Imperative,</i> | ክላላ:   |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | ክላልቶ: |  | <i>Infinitive,</i> | መላላት:: |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Reflective Voice.*

ተራራ: Was pitied.

|                      |       |  |                    |       |
|----------------------|-------|--|--------------------|-------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | ደራራ:  |  | <i>Imperative,</i> | ተራራ:  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | ተራርቶ: |  | <i>Infinitive,</i> | መራራት: |

(bb) *Biliterals beginning with ክ: and terminating in an Absorbed Guttural.*

They are but few, and have only Three Conjugations. They have the Paragogic ት:



## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***አጣ:** He wanted, had not.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

| SINGULAR.  |                              | PLURAL.                 |
|------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3d p. m.   | <b>አጣ:</b> he wanted.        | <b>አጡ:</b> they wanted. |
| ... f.     | <b>አጣች:</b> she wanted.      |                         |
| 2d .. m.   | <b>አጣህ:</b> fem. <b>አጣሽ:</b> | <b>አጣችሁ:</b>            |
| .. hon. 1. | <b>አጡ:</b> 2. <b>አጣችሁ:</b>   |                         |
| 1st com.   | <b>አጣሁ:</b>                  | <b>አጣኑ::</b>            |

3d pers. masc.

*Present, and Future.***ያጣል:** he wants. fem. **ታጣለች:** | **ያጣሉ:** they want.

## 2. CONTINGENT.

**ያጣ:** fem. **ታጣ:** | **ያጡ:**

## 3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

**ይጣ:** fem. **ትጣ:** | **ይጡ::**

## 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

**አጥቶ:** he wanting. fem. **አጥታ:** | **አጥተው:** they wanting.

## 5. IMPERATIVE.

**አጣ:** fem. **አጭ:** do thou want. | **አጡ:** do ye want.

## 6. INFINITIVE.

**መጣት:** To want, the wanting, want.

## 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple,* None.*Rel. Pret.* **ያጣ:** he who wanted.*Pres.* **የመጣ ያጣ::** he who wants.

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Intransitive Voice.***ታጣ:** To be wanted.*Contingent,* **ይታጣ::***Imperative,* **ታጣ::***Constructive,* **ታጥቶ::***Infinitive,* **መታጣት::**



## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive, Causative Voice.***አሳጣ:** To deprive.Contingent, **ዖሳጣ:**Imperative, **አሰጣ:**Subjunctive, **ዖሰጣ:**Infinitive, **ማሳጣት:**Constructive, **አሳጥቶ:**(cc) *Verb beginning with P: which absorbs a Guttural.*

Only one Verb has been discovered to belong to this class.

**ዖዘ:** Eth. **አፃዘ:** To seize.The **ዖ:** is shortened into **ዪ:** and even reduced to the mere vowel *i*.

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ዖዘ:** He seized.

## 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

## SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ዖዘ:** he seized.... f. **ዖዘኛ:** she seized.2d .. m. **ዖዘህ:** fem. **ዖዘሽ:**.. hon. 1. **ዖዘ:** 2. **ዖዘኑህ:**1st com. **ዖዘሁ:**

## PLURAL.

**ዖዘ:** they seized.**ዖዘኑሁ:****ዖዘኑ:***Present and Future.*3d p. m. { **ዪዛል:** & **ዪዪዛል:** } he seizes.**ዪዛሉ:** and **ዪዪዛሉ:** they seize.... f. { **ቲዛለኛ:** & **ትዪዛለኛ:** } she seizes.2d .. m. **ቲዛለህ:** & **ትዪዛለህ:****ቲዛለኑሁ:** and **ትዪዛለኑሁ:**... f. **ቲዛለሽ:** & **ትዪዛለሽ:**.. hon. 1. **ዪዛሉ:** and **ዪዪዛሉ:**... 2. { **ቲዛለኑሁ:** & **ትዪዛለኑሁ:** }1st com. **ኢዛለሁ:** & **ኢዪዛለሁ:****ኢኒዛለን:** and **ኢንዪዛለን:**

## 2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ዪዝ:****ዪዝ:**... f. **ቲዝ:** and **ትዪዝ:**2d .. m. **ቲዝ:** and **ትዪዝ:****ቲዝ:** and **ትዪዝ:**... f. **ቲዟ:** and **ትዪዟ:**.. hon. 1. **ዪዝ:** 2. **ቲዝ:** & **ትዪዝ:**1st com. **ኢዝ:** and **ኢዪዝ:****ኢኒዝ:** and **ኢንዪዝ:**



3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|            |                                |                             |
|------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3d p. m.   | <b>ያዝ</b> : may he seize.      | <b>ያዙ</b> : may they seize. |
| ... f.     | <b>ትያዝ</b> : may she seize.    |                             |
| 2d .. m.   | <b>ትያዝ</b> : fem. <b>ትያዝ</b> : | <b>ትያዙ</b> :                |
| .. hon. 1. | <b>ያዙ</b> :                    | 2. <b>ትያዙ</b> :             |
| 1st com.   | <b>እያዝ</b> :                   | <b>እንያዝ</b> ::              |

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

|            |                                |                           |
|------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 3d p. m.   | <b>ያዝ</b> : he seizing.        | <b>ያዙ</b> : they seizing. |
| ... f.     | <b>ያዝ</b> : she seizing.       |                           |
| 2d .. m.   | <b>ያዝህ</b> : fem. <b>ያዝሽ</b> : | <b>ያዝኙሁ</b> :             |
| .. hon. 1. | <b>ያዙ</b> : 2. <b>ያዝኙሁ</b> :   |                           |
| 1st com.   | <b>ያዝ</b> :                    | <b>ያዝን</b> ::             |

5. IMPERATIVE.

|                   |                  |                          |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| Masc. <b>ያዝ</b> : | } do thou seize. | <b>ያዙ</b> : do ye seize. |
| Fem. <b>ያዝ</b> :  |                  |                          |

6. INFINITIVE.

**መያዝ**: to seize, the seizing, seizure.

7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple*, **ያዝ**: a seizer. *Rel. Pret.* **የያዘ**: he who seized.

*Present.*

SINGULAR.

|             |                                                   |                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>የሚያዝ</b> : and <b>የሚያዝ</b> : he who seizes.    |                     |
| ... fem.    | <b>የምትያዝ</b> : and <b>የምትያዝ</b> : she who seizes. |                     |
| 2d .. masc. | <b>የምትያዝ</b> : and <b>የምትያዝ</b> :                 | } thou who seizest. |
| ... fem.    | <b>የምትያዝ</b> : and <b>የምትያዝ</b> :                 |                     |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>የሚያዝ</b> : and <b>የሚያዝ</b> :                   | } you who seize.    |
| ... .. 2.   | <b>የምትያዝ</b> : and <b>የምትያዝ</b> :                 |                     |
| ... com.    | <b>የምያዝ</b> : I who seize.                        |                     |

PLURAL.

**የሚያዝ**: and **የሚያዝ**: they who seize.  
**የምትያዝ**: and **የምትያዝ**: you who seize.  
**የምንያዝ**: and **የምንያዝ**: we who seize.



## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***አያዝ**: He caused to seize.

|                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያያዝ</b> :   | Imperative, <b>አያዝ</b> :  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያያዝ</b> :  | Infinitive, <b>ማያዝ</b> :: |
| Constructive, <b>አያዝ</b> : |                           |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተያዝ**: He was seized.

|                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያያዝ</b> :   | Imperative, <b>ተያዝ</b> :  |
| Constructive, <b>ተያዝ</b> : | Infinitive, <b>መያዝ</b> :: |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስያዝ**: He caused to be seized, betrayed.

|                                              |                            |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያሰዝ</b> : and <b>ያስያዝ</b> :   | Imperative, <b>አስያዝ</b> :  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያስያዝ</b> :                   | Infinitive, <b>ማስያዝ</b> :: |
| Constructive, <b>አሰዝ</b> : and <b>አስያዝ</b> : |                            |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Passive, Frequentative and Reciprocal.***ተያያዝ**: He frequently, alternately, reciprocally, completely, seized, or was seized.

|                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያያያዝ</b> ::   | Imperative, <b>ተያያዝ</b> :: |
| Constructive, <b>ተያያዝ</b> :: | Infinitive, <b>መያያዝ</b> :: |

## 4. Various Conjugations of Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs.

## I. FIRST CLASS.—Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.

This numerous class has Eleven Conjugations. (See pp. 56—60.)

## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Active Voice.***ለመለመ**: It was green.      **ቀጠቀጠ**: He beat.

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ይለመልሞ</b> :  | Imperative, <b>ለሞልሞ</b> :   |
| Subjunctive, <b>ይለሞልሞ</b> : | Infinitive, <b>መለሞልሞ</b> :: |
| Constructive, <b>ለሞልሞ</b> : |                             |



## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.***አለግጦለግጦ:** He made green, verdant, refreshed.

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያለመልግጦ:</b>    | Imperative, <b>አለግጦልግጦ:</b>  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያለግጦልግጦ:</b>  | Infinitive, <b>ማለግጦለግጦ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አለግጦልግጦ:</b> |                              |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተለቀለቀ:** He was bedaubed.

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ይለቀለቅ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>ተለቀለቅ:</b> |
| Constructive, <b>ተለቅልቅ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መለቀለቅ:</b> |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Active Voice.***አነቃነቃ:** He shook.

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያነቃንቅ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>አንቃንቅ:</b>  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያንቃንቅ:</b>  | Infinitive, <b>ማንቃነቅ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አንቃንቅ:</b> |                            |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ተለቃለቃ:** He bedaubed, washed himself.

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ይለቃለቅ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>ተለቃለቅ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተልቃልቅ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መለቃለቅ::</b> |

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***አስለቀለቀ:** He caused bedaubing. (**አሸከረከረ:** He moved, crept.)

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያስለቀልቅ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>አስለቅልቅ:</b>  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያስልቅልቅ:</b>  | Infinitive, <b>ማስለቅለቅ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አስለቅልቅ:</b> |                             |



## G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አንበደበደ:** He beat, shook.

|                      |                |                    |                 |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ደንበደብደ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>አንበደብደ:</b>  |
| <i>Subjunctive,</i>  | <b>ደንበደብደ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>ማንበደብደ::</b> |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>አንበደብደ:</b> |                    |                 |

---

## H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive Voice.***ተንቀጠቀጠ:** He trembled.

|                      |                |                    |                 |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ደንቀጠቀጥ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>ተንቀጠቀጥ:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>ተንቀጥቅጦ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መንቀጠቀጥ::</b> |

---

## I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Active Voice.***አንቀሳቀሰ:** He stirred up, moved.

|                      |                |                    |                 |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ደንቀሳቅሰ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>አንቅሳቅሰ:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>አንቀሳቅሶ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>ማንቀሳቀሰ::</b> |

---

## K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ተንቀሳቀሰ:** He was stirred, He moved.

|                      |                |                    |                 |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ደንቀሳቀሰ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>ተንቀሳቀሰ:</b>  |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>ተንቀሳቅሶ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>መንቀሳቀሰ::</b> |

---

## L. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***አሳንቀሳቀሰ:** He stirred, moved.

|                      |                 |                    |                  |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>Contingent,</i>   | <b>ደሳንቀሳቅሰ:</b> | <i>Imperative,</i> | <b>አስንቅሳቅሰ:</b>  |
| <i>Subjunctive,</i>  | <b>ደስንቅሳቅሰ:</b> | <i>Infinitive,</i> | <b>ማሳንቀሳቀሰ::</b> |
| <i>Constructive,</i> | <b>አሳንቅሳቅሶ:</b> |                    |                  |

---



## II. SECOND CLASS.—*Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical Reduplicated and Transposed.*

This class is not numerous, and it has Six Conjugations.

### A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.*

**ደሎደሞ:** He was blunt.

#### 1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.*

##### SINGULAR.

##### PLURAL.

|             |                            |                               |
|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 3d p. masc. | <b>ደሎደሞ:</b> he was blunt. | <b>ደሎደሙ:</b> they were blunt. |
| ... fem.    | <b>ደሎደሙት:</b>              |                               |
| 2d .. masc. | <b>ደሎደሞህ:</b>              | <b>ደሎደማችሁ:</b>                |
| ... fem.    | <b>ደሎደሞሽ:</b>              |                               |
| ... hon. 1. | <b>ደሎደሙ:</b>               |                               |
| ... hon. 2. | <b>ደሎደማችሁ:</b>             |                               |
| 1st.. com.  | <b>ደሎደሞሁ:</b>              | <b>ደሎደሞኑ:</b>                 |

*Present and Future.*

**ደደሎደማል:** he is blunt.

**ደደሎደማሉ:** they are blunt.

#### 2. CONTINGENT.

**ደደሎደሞ:** fem. **ትደሎደሞ:** | **ደደሎደሙ:**

#### 3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

**ደሎደሞቱ:** he being blunt.

**ደሎደሞተው:**

#### 5. NO IMPERATIVE.

#### 6. INFINITIVE.

**መደሎደሙት:** to be blunt, the being blunt, bluntness.

#### 7. PARTICIPLES.

*Rel. Pret.* **ደደሎደሞ:** he who was blunt.

*Pres.* **ዋወደደሎደሞ:** he who is blunt.

### B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive, and Intransitive Voice.*

**አደሎደሞ:** He blunted.

**አጉረመረመ:** He murmured.

*Contingent,* **ያጉረመርሞ:**

*Imperative,* **አጉረሞረሞ:**

*Subjunctive,* **ያጉረሞረሞ:**

*Infinitive,* **መጉረሞረሞ:**

*Constructive,* **አጉረሞርሞ:**



## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተደሎደሞ**: Was blunted.

|                               |  |                              |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደደሎደሞ</b> :    |  | Imperative, <b>ተደሎደሞ</b> :   |
| Constructive, <b>ተደሎደሞት</b> : |  | Infinitive, <b>መደሎደመት</b> :: |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አከፍወኑ**: He gave success.

|                              |  |                             |
|------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያከፍወን</b> :   |  | Imperative, <b>አከፍወን</b> :  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ያከፍወን</b> :  |  | Infinitive, <b>ማከፍወን</b> :: |
| Constructive, <b>አከፍወኑ</b> : |  |                             |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተከፍወኑ**: He had success, succeeded, prospered.

|                              |  |                             |
|------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያከፍወን</b> :   |  | Imperative, <b>ተከፍወን</b> :  |
| Constructive, <b>ተከፍወኑ</b> : |  | Infinitive, <b>መከፍወን</b> :: |

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***ተንገረገበ**: It became knotty.

|                               |  |                              |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ያንገረገበ</b> :   |  | Imperative, <b>ተንገረገበ</b> :  |
| Constructive, <b>ተንገረገቡ</b> : |  | Infinitive, <b>መንገረገበ</b> :: |

## III. THIRD CLASS.

Geminants, probably derived from Triliterals, but having their original verb lost, so as not to be reckoned to the geminating Conjugation of the Triliteral Regular Verb. This class is but small—is inflected through six conjugations, similar to other Geminants.



## A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive.***ኩብላል:** He escaped.

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደኩብል:</b>   | Imperative, <b>ኩብላል:</b>   |
| Subjunctive, <b>ደኩብላል:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መኩብላል::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>ኩብላሎ:</b> |                            |

## B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተደመሰሰ:** He was destroyed.

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደደመሰሰ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>ተደመሰሰ:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተደምሰሶ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መደመሰሰ::</b> |

## C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተጉማላል:** Walked nimbly, affectedly, proudly.

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደጉማላል:</b>  | Imperative, <b>ተጉማላል:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተጉማሎ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መጉማላል::</b> |

## D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አስጠነቀቀ:** He cautioned.

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደስጠነቀቀ:</b>   | Imperative, <b>አስጠነቀቀ:</b>  |
| Subjunctive, <b>ደስጠነቅቅ:</b>  | Infinitive, <b>ማስጠነቀቅ::</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አስጠነቅቅ:</b> |                             |

## E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አንከባላል:** He rolled about.

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደንከባል:</b>   | Imperative, <b>አንከባላል:</b> |
| Constructive, <b>አንከባሎ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>ማንከባላል:</b> |

## F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተንከባላል:** He was rolled about.

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Contingent, <b>ደንከባላል:</b>  | Imperative, <b>ተንከባላል:</b>  |
| Constructive, <b>ተንከባሎ:</b> | Infinitive, <b>መንከባላል::</b> |

~~~~~


IV. FOURTH CLASS.

Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***መሰገነ:** Was glorious.

Contingent, ደመሰገን:	Imperative, መሰገን:
Subjunctive, ደመሰገን:	Infinitive, መመሰገን::
Constructive, መሰገኖ:	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አመሰገነ:** He glorified.

Contingent, ዖመሰገን:	Imperative, አመሰግን:
Subjunctive, ዖመሰግን:	Infinitive, ማመሰገን::
Constructive, አመሰግኖ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተመሰገነ:** He was glorified.

Contingent, ደመሰገን:	Imperative, ተመሰገን:
Constructive, ተመሰገኖ:	Infinitive, መመሰገን::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አሰፍቦት:** He dismissed.

Contingent, ዖሰፍብት:	Imperative, አሰፍብት:
Constructive, አሰፍብቱ:	Infinitive, ማሰፍቦት::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Passive Voice.***ተሰፍቦት:** He was dismissed.

Contingent, ደሰፍቦት:	Imperative, ተሰፍቦት:
Constructive, ተሰፍብቱ:	Infinitive, መሰፍቦት:

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Causative Voice.

አስመሰገን: He causes to be glorious or glorified.

Contingent, ያስመሰግን:	Imperative, አስመሰግን:
Subjunctive, ያስመሰግን:	Infinitive, ማስመሰገን:
Constructive, አስመሰግኖ:	

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive Voice.

ገልገበጠ: He overthrew completely.

Contingent, ይገልገብኑ:	Imperative, ገልገብኑ:
Subjunctive, ይገልገብኑ:	Infinitive, መገልገበኑ::
Constructive, ገልገብጦ:	

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Intensely Passive Voice.

ተገልገበጠ: He was completely overthrown.

Contingent, ይገልገበኑ:	Imperative, ተገልገበኑ:
Constructive, ተገልገብጦ:	Infinitive, መገልገበኑ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

Reciprocal and Reiterative Voice.

ተሰናገበተ: Took leave from each other.

Contingent, ይሰናገቡት:	Imperative, ተሰናገቡት:
Constructive, ተሰናገቡት:	Infinitive, መሰናገቡት:

5. *Defective and Anomalous Verbs..*

Three of them—viz. I. The Auxiliary **አለ:** "He is"; II. **ነበረ:** "He was"; III. **ነወ:** "He is,"—have been conjugated before we entered upon the Regular Triliteral Verb. (See pp. 64, 65.) We proceed to give here the rest.

IV. *Various Conjugations of the Verb አለ:* "He said."

The irregularities in this verb are caused by the mixing together of the two forms **አለ:** and **ባለ:** Eth. **ብህለ:** "To say." This verb has Ten Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አለ: he said.	አሉ: they said.
.. .. fem.	አለች: she said.	
2d .. masc.	አልህ: fem. አልሽ:	አላችሁ:
.. .. hon. 1.	አሉ: 2. አላችሁ:	
1st. . com.	አልሁ:	አልኑ::

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ይላል: he says.	ይላሉ: they say.
.. .. fem.	ትላለች: she says.	
2d .. masc.	ትላልህ: f. ትያለሽ:	ትላላችሁ:
.. .. hon. 1.	ይላሉ: 2. ትላላችሁ:	
1st. . com.	ኧላልሁ:	ኧንላለን::

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይል: and ይበል:	ይሉ: and ይበሉ:
.. .. fem.	ትል: and ትበል:	
2d .. masc.	ትል: and ትበል:	ትሉ: and ትበሉ:
.. .. fem.	ትይ: and ትበይ:	
.. .. hon. 1.	ይሉ: and ይበሉ:	
.. 2.	ትሉ: and ትበሉ:	
1st. . com.	ኧል: and ኧበል:	ኧንል: and ኧንበል:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ብሎ: he saying.	ብለው:
.. .. fem.	ብላ: she saying.	
2d .. masc.	ብለህ: fem. ብለሽ:	ብላችሁ:
.. .. hon. 1.	ብለው: 2. ብላችሁ:	
1st. . com.	ብዩ:	ብለን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	በል: }	do thou say.	በሉ: do ye say.
Fem.	በይ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማለት: To say, the saying, meaning, intention.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ባይ**: one who says.
Rel. Pret. **ያለ**: he who said.
Pres. **የሚል**: he who says.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

አበለ: To deceive by talking.

Contingent, ያብል :	Imperative, አብል :
Constructive, አብሎ :	Infinitive, ማበል ::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ተባለ: *pass.* To be said, called, named.

1. PRÆTERITE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. m. ተባለ :	he was called.	ተባሉ : they were called.
... f. ተባለች :	she was called.	ተባላችሁ :
2d .. m. ተባልህ :	f. ተባልሽ :	
.. hon. 1. ተባሉ :	2. ተባላችሁ :	
1st com. ተባልሁ :		ተባልኑ ::

Present and Future.

3d p. m. ይባላል :	he is called.	ይባላሉ : they are called.
... f. ትባላለች :	she is called.	
Contingent, ይባል :		Imperative, none.
Constructive, ትብሎ :		Infinitive, ማባል ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ታበለ: *pass.* from **አበለ**: To be deceived.

Contingent, ይታበል :	Imperative, ታበል :
Constructive, ታብሎ :	Infinitive, ማታበል ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

ተባላ: To rumour in public.

Whether any more than the Preterite Indicative is extant of this form, we do not know.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

አገበል: He persuaded.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያገብል:	<i>Imperative,</i>	አገብል:
<i>Constructive,</i>	አገብሎ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማገበል::

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተገበል: To be persuaded, to say to each other.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደገበል:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተገበል:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተገብሎ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መገበል::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

ተገገል: *recipr.* To say to each other.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደገገል:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተገገል:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተገብሎ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መገገል:

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

ተለል: He was talked into any thing, was persuaded, duped.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደተለል:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተለል:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተሎ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መተለል::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

አተለል: He persuaded, cheated.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያተል:	<i>Imperative,</i>	አተለል:
<i>Constructive,</i>	አተሎ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማተለል::

V. First Conjugation of the Verb **አኸል:** "To be equal," "amount to."

The remainder of this verb, **ተኸኸል:** and **አስተኸኸል:** is regular. The anomaly of the First Conjugation consists in its assuming more of the form **አኸል:** or **አህል:** than of **አኸል:**, and in its not having all the Moods and Tenses. We give here all that is, as far as we know, extant.

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite, none.**Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	ያህል: he is equal,		ያህሉ:
The other Persons are wanting.			

2. CONTINGENT.

3d Person Masculine, **ያህል**: Feminine, **ትህል**:

These two personal forms only are used with the signification, "Amounting to," "equal to;" *e.g.* **የሚሰጠውን: ያህል**: "*equal to what he gives.*"

SUBJUNCTIVE, CONSTRUCTIVE, and IMPERATIVE—NONE.

INFINITIVE, **ማከል**: *i.q.* **መካከል**: and **መካከል**: "the middle."

PARTICIPLES—Eth. **ኦከል**: "equal," "half."

Rel. Pres. **የሚያህል**: "what is equal to," "amounts to, about, almost"; *e.g.*

ሶስት: ሺህ: የሚያህል "*amounting to (about) three thousand.*"

VI. Negative Verb **ሌለ**: "Is not."

All that exists of this verb is this: **ሌለ**: "it (he) is not." fem. **ሌለች**:
Participle, **የሌለ**: fem. **የሌለች**: "that which is not," "has not," "is without;" "without," "besides," "exclusively," "not including."

VII. Of the verb **ላቀ**: (Eth. **ልህቀ**:) "To be greater," "larger," "excel;" in the First Conjugation, nothing is extant but the 3d pers. masc. Conting. **ይልቅ**: which is used as a sort of Comparative, "more," "greater," "especially"; and Participle, **የሚልቅ**: **የምትልቅ**: "he, she, or it, who (which) is greater," "superior," "excels."

The Transitive form of this verb **አላቀ**: "he raised," "made excellent," is quite regular.

VIII. Verb **መጣ**: "He came," is, in its First Conjugation, destitute of an Imperative; whilst all the rest is regular and perfect. The Imperative is supplied by the form **ኛ**: Eth. and Tigr. **ንዒ**: Sing. masc. **ኛ**: fem. **ኒ**: and **ንደ**: "do thou come." Pl. **ኑ**: "do ye come." Only in very rare instances they use a regular form **ምጣ**: **ምጩ**: **ምጡ**:; but it is against the custom.

IX. **ተወ**: "He left," "omitted," "abandoned," "left off."

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ተወ :	fem. ተወች :	ተወ :
2d .. masc.	ተውህ :	fem. ተውሽ :	
.. .. hon. 1.	ተወ :	2. ተዋችሁ :	ተዋችሁ :
1st.. com.	ተውሁ :		ተውኑ :

SINGULAR. *Present and Future.* PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይተዋል : he abandons.	ይተዋሉ : they abandon.
.. .. fem.	ትተዋለች :	
2d .. masc.	ትተዋለህ :	
.. .. fem.	ትተዋለሽ :	

(The rest is regular.)

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይተው :	fem. ትተው :	ይተው :
.. .. masc.	ትተው :	fem. ትተይ :	

(The rest is regular.)

3. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ትቶ :	fem. ትታ :	ትተው :
2d .. masc.	ትተህ :	fem. ትተሽ :	ትታችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ትተው :	2. ትታችሁ :	
1st .. com.	ትቹ :		ትተን :

4. IMPERATIVE.

masc. ተው :	fem. ተይ :	ተው :
-------------------	------------------	-------------

6. INFINITIVE. **መተውት**:7. PARTICIPLES. **የተው**: **የሚተው**:

The Transitive Conjugation of this verb, **እስተው**: "he caused to abandon," is analogous to the preceding; the **ው**: being changed in the 2d Fem. Sing. of the Ind. Pres., Conting., and Imper. into **የ**:, and rejected in the Constr.

X. Verb **ካ**: and **እካ**: "to desire," "want," "seek."

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite. Regular.**Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይካል : he wants.	ይካሉ : they want.
.. .. fem.	ትካለች : she wants.	
2d .. masc.	ትካለህ : f. ትካለሽ :	ትካለችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ይካሉ : 2. ትካለችሁ :	
1st .. com.	እካለሁ :	እንካለን :

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይካ :	fem. ትካ :	ይኩ :
2d .. masc.	ትካ :	fem. ትኪ :	ትኩ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ይኩ :	2. ትኩ :	
1st .. com.	እካ :		እንካ :

	SINGULAR.	3. CONSTRUCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ሸቶ: he wanting.		ሸተው: they wanting.
.. .. fem.	ሸታ: she wanting.		
2d .. masc.	ሸተህ: fem. ሸተሽ:		ሸታኝሁ:
.. .. hon. 1.	ሸተው: 2. ሸታኝሁ:		
1st.. com.	ሸፔ:		ሸተን::

4. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አካ: }	do thou seek.	አሹ: do ye seek.
Fem. አሺ: }		

5. INFINITIVE.

መሻት: to want, &c. the want, desire, request.

6. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, none.

Perfect, የካ: he who wanted.

Present, የሚካ: he who wants.

The Transitive form of this verb, አካ: is only used impersonally, in the 3d person singular masc. and fem., with the signification, “to be requisite,” or, in the mind of an Abyssinian, “to produce a feeling of want by absence”; e.g. አያካኝም: “I do not want (it).” The forms used are these:

<i>Preterite</i> , አካ:	<i>Contingent</i> , ያካ:
<i>Present</i> , የካል:	<i>Infinitive</i> , መሻት::

XI. Of the verb የለም: which is negative to the verb አለ: “He is,” nothing is extant but the 3d person singular masc. የለም: “he (it) is not,” fem. የለችም: “she (it) is not,” and plural የሉም: “they are not.” With Suffixes, it signifies “has (have) not,” e.g. የለውም: “he has not.” የለችም: “she has not.” የለንም: “we have not,” &c.

XII. The negative አይደለም: “Is not,” is the negative answering the substantive verb ነው: “He is.” Whence it is derived, we know not. It is used only in the Preterite of the Indicative and Participle, which we give here.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አይደለም: he is not.		አይደሉም: they are not.
.. .. fem.	አይደለችም:		
2d .. masc.	አይደለህም:		አይደሉኝም:
.. .. fem.	አይደለሽም:		
.. .. hon. 1.	አይደሉም:		
.. 2.	አይደሉኝም:		
1st.. com.	አይደለሁም:		አይደለንም::

Relative Participle Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	የደረሰ : he who is not.	የደረሱ : they who are not.
.. .. fem.	የደረሰች :	
2d .. masc.	የደረሰህ :	የደረሱት :
.. .. fem.	የደረሰች :	
.. .. hon. 1.	የደረሰ :	
.. .. ' .. 2.	የደረሱት :	
1st. com.	የደረሱ :	የደረሱት :

አደረሰም: also is used for the Adverb of Negation, "No."

SECTION V.

On the Connexion of Pronouns with Verbs.

1. In other languages, this subject would be referred to the Syntax; but in the Semitic family, the Pronouns governed by Verbs are so closely joined to them, that it would be improper to do so, as the form of the verb is modified in no slight degree by this combination. We conceive it to be here the best place for exhibiting the mode in which it is performed, after having explained all the other processes to which the Amharic Verbs are subjected.

2. Before we entered on the consideration of the Verb, in the preceding Chapter, Sect. VIII. we mentioned those Pronouns which are joined to Verbs. We now give a brief statement of the regulations under which they are joined.

(a) All the forms of Verbs assume the Verbal Suffixes, except the two nominal forms, the Infinitive and the Simple Participle, which assume Nominal Suffixes; *e.g.* **እርሱን መጠበቁ**: "my keeping him." **ጋሻ**: **ጦርን ተሸካሚው**: "his armour-bearer."

(b) All the forms which assume the Verbal Suffixes do receive them at the end, except the two forms which are inflected with the Auxiliary **አለ**: *i.e.* the Present and Future Indicative, and the Aorist of the Constructive Mood; which place the Pronoun between the radical letters and the Auxiliary, so as to render it rather an Infix than a Suffix.

(c) With regard to the different degrees of power the Suffixes possess, of changing the letter to which they are joined, they are divided into light (*levia*) and heavy (*gravia*) Suffixes. The light Suffixes are those which are not preceded by a long ā: those which are preceded by a long ā are heavy Suffixes.

(d) The *light Suffixes* attach themselves to *ultimæ radicales* of the first order, without change; and to ult. rad. of the sixth order, by converting the latter into the first order, sometimes without change. The heavy suffixes convert ult. rad., in either of those two orders, into the fourth order.

(e) Ultima radicalis of the second and of the seventh order, in accordance with Part I. Ch. VII. 5 & 6.

α. changes **፱**: into **፲**::

β. is changed, if it is a guttural or palatine, into a diphthong of the fourth order: if not, the vowel is detached from the consonant; the latter being put into the sixth, and the former becoming **፱**: of the fourth order, before all the heavy suffixes. Before suffix 2d pers. hon. 1., it is either left unchanged, or changed into the sixth order, leaving the suffix as it is.

(f) Ult. rad. of the third and of the fifth order changes none of the light suffixes; but agreeably to Part I. Ch. VII. 4. D., when being attached to the heavy suffixes, it is generally changed into the sixth order; and **፱**: is added, to assume the long ā of the suffix.

(g) Ult. rad. of the fourth order neither suffers nor produces any change.

(h) With regard to the *insertion* or *infixion* of Pronouns, only this needs to be observed; that **አ**: of the Auxiliary **አለ**: being absorbed by the Pronoun, the latter, or, if it consists of more than one letter, its last letter, is put into the fourth order, **ሁ**: being changed into **ኋ**: or **ኸ**::

These rules are illustrated by the following Table:

TABLE OF A VERB WITH SUFFIXES.

መገበ: He has fed.

I. SIMPLE FORMS.

A. Preterite.

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገበኝ : he has fed me.		መገበችኝ : she has fed me.
መገበህ : he has fed thee (m.).		መገበችህ : she has fed thee (m.).
መገበሽ : he has fed thee (f.).		መገበችሽ : she has fed thee (f.).
መገበዎ : he has fed you (hon. 1).		መገበችዎ : she has fed you (h. 1).
መገበኛሁ : he has fed you (hon. 2).		መገበችኛሁ : she has fed you (h. 2).
መገበው : he has fed him.		መገበችው : she has fed him.
መገበች : he has fed her.		መገበችች : she has fed her.
መገበኑ : he has fed us. ^{PL.}		መገበችኑ : she has fed us. ^{PL.}
መገበኛሁ : he has fed you.		መገበችኛሁ : she has fed you.
መገበኛው : he has fed them.		መገበችኛው : she has fed them.

Masculine.	SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገብህኝ: thou hast fed me.		መገብሽኝ: thou (<i>f.</i>) hast fed me.
መገብህው: thou hast fed him.		መገብሽው: thou (<i>f.</i>) hast fed him.
መገብሃት: thou hast fed her.		መገብሽኝ: thou (<i>f.</i>) hast fed her.
መገብህነ: ^{PL.} thou hast fed us.		መገብሽነ: ^{PL.} thou hast fed us.
መገብሃቸው: thou hast fed them.		መገብሽቸው: thou hast fed them.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, HONORIFIC, like the Third and Second Plural.

FIRST PERSON COMMON.

መገብሁህ: I have fed thee (<i>m.</i>)
መገብሁሽ: I have fed thee (<i>f.</i>)
መገብሁዎ: I have fed you (<i>hon. 1.</i>)
መገብኋችሁ: I have fed you (<i>hon. 2.</i>)
መገብሁት: I have fed him.
መገብኋት: I have fed her.
መገብኋችሁ: ^{PL.} I have fed you.
መገብኋቸው: I have fed them.

THIRD PERSON.	PLURAL.	SECOND PERSON.
መገቡኝ: they have fed me.		መገባችሁኝ: you have fed me.
መገቡህ: they have fed thee (<i>m.</i>)		መገባችሁት: you have fed him.
መገቡሽ: they have fed thee (<i>f.</i>)		መገባችኋት: you have fed her.
መገብዎ: they have fed you (<i>h. 1.</i>)		መገባችሁነ: ^{PL.} you have fed us.
መገብዋችሁ: they have fed you (<i>h. 2.</i>)		መገባችኋቸው: you have fed them.
መገቡት: they have fed him.		
መገብዋት: they have fed her.		
መገቡነ: ^{PL.} they have fed us.		
መገብዋችሁ: they have fed you.		
መገብዋቸው: they have fed them.		
		FIRST PERSON.
	መገብነህ: we have fed thee (<i>m.</i>)	
	መገብነሽ: we have fed thee (<i>f.</i>)	
	መገብነዎ: we have fed you (<i>h. 1.</i>)	
	መገብነችሁ: we have fed you (<i>h. 2.</i>)	
	መገብነው: we have fed him.	
	መገብነት: we have fed her.	
	መገብነችሁ: ^{PL.} we have fed you.	
	መገብነቸው: we have fed them.	

B. *Contingent.*

Masculine.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

ይመግበኝ: let him feed me.**ይመግብህ:** let him feed thee (*m.*)**ይመግብኽ:** let him feed thee (*f.*)**ይመግበወ:** let him feed you. (*h.1.*)**ይመግባችሁ:** let him feed you. (*h.2.*)**ይመግበው:** let him feed him.**ይመግባት:** let him feed her.**ይመግበን:** let him feed ^{PL.}us.**ይመግባችሁ:** let him feed you.**ይመግባቸው:** let him feed them.**ትመግበኝ:** let her feed me, &c &c.
quite like **ይመግበኝ:** &c.

SECOND PERSON MASCULINE.

ትመግበኝ: like the 3d pers. fem.

SECOND PERSON FEMININE.

ትመግቢኝ: mayest thou (*f.*) feed me.**ትመግቢው:** mayest thou feed him.**ትመግብያት:** mayest thou feed her.**ትመግቢን:** mayest thou feed us.**ትመግብያቸው:** { mayest thou
feed them.

FIRST PERSON.

እመግብህ: &c., assumes the Suffixes, like the 3d pers. masc.

THIRD PERSON.

PLURAL.

SECOND PERSON.

ይመግቡኝ: let them feed me.**ይመግቡህ:** let them feed thee.**ይመግቡኽ:** let them feed thee.**ይመግበወ:** let them feed you. (*h.1.*)**ይመግብዎችሁ:** { let them feed
you. (*hon.2.*)**ይመግቡት:** let them feed him.**ይመግቡት:** let them feed her.**ይመግቡን:** let them feed ^{PL.}us.**ይመግብዎችሁ:** let them feed you.**ይመግብዎቸው:** let them feed them.**ትመግቡ:** the same as with the
3d pers. plural.

FIRST PERSON.

እንመግብ: the same as with the
3d pers. sing.C. The *Imperative* joins the Suffixes in the same manner as the *Contingent*.

D. *Simple Constructive.*

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.	
መግብኝ:	he feeding me.	መግባኝ:	she feeding me.
መግብህ: }	he feeding thee.	መግባህ: }	she feeding thee.
መግብሽ:		መግባሽ:	
መግብዎ: }	he feeding you.	መግባዎ: }	she feeding you.
መግብዎችሁ:		መግባችሁ:	
መግብት:	he feeding him.	መግባው:	she feeding him.
መግብዋት:	he feeding her.	መግባት:	she feeding her.
መግብን:	he feeding ^{PL.} us	መግባን:	she feeding ^{PL.} us.
መግብዎችሁ:	he feeding you.	መግባችሁ:	she feeding you.
መግብዎቻቸው:	he feeding them.	መግባቸው:	she feeding them.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

መግብህኝ: thou feeding me. | መግባሽኝ: thou feeding me.

Assume the Suffixes like the same Persons in the Preterite.

Second Pers. Sing. honor. 3d and 2d Plural, the same as Preterite 3d and 2d Plural.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.		FIRST PERSON PLURAL.	
መግቢህ:	} I feeding thee.	መግብንህ:	} we feeding them.
መግቢሽ:		መግብንሽ:	
መግቢዎ:	} I feeding you.	መግብነዎ :	} we feeding you.
መግብዎችሁ:		መግብናችሁ:	
መግቢው:	I feeding him.	መግብነው:	we feeding him.
መግብዋት:	I feeding her.	መግብናት:	we feeding her.
መግብዎችሁ:	I feeding you. (pl.)	መግብናችሁ:	we feeding you. (pl.)
መግብዎቻቸው:	I feeding them.	መግብናቸው:	we feeding them.

NOTE.—Constructive Forms with the paragogic **ተ**: differ in nothing concerning the affixion of the Pronoun.

E. The Relative Participle treats the Suffixes like the Preterite Indicative and the Contingent.

2. *Forms with the Auxiliary አለ:: Infixion.*

INDICATIVE.

Present and Future.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR MASCULINE.

(See Contingent.)

ይመግብኛል: he feeds me.

ይመግብሃል: } he feeds thee.

ይመግብሻል: }

ይመግብዋል: } he feeds you.

ይመግባችኋል: }

ይመግብዋል: he feeds him.

ይመግባታል: he feeds her.

ይመግብናል: he feeds us.

ይመግባችኋል: he feeds you.

ይመግባቸዋል: he feeds them.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

ይመግቡኛል: they feed me.

ይመግቡሃል: } they feed thee.

ይመግቡሻል: }

ይመግቡዋችኋል: } they feed you.

ይመግቡታል: }

ይመግቡታል: they feed him.

ይመግቡዋታል: they feed her.

ይመግቡናል: they feed us.

ይመግቡዋችኋል: they feed you.

ይመግቡዋቸዋል: they feed them.

3d p. Sing. Fem.

2d Masc.

1st.. .. & P.

in the same manner
as the 3d pers. sing.
masc. with neces-
sary termination of
አለ::

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR FEMININE.

ትመግቢኛለሽ: thou feedest me.

ትመግቢዋለሽ: thou feedest him.

ትመግብዋለሽ: thou feedest her.

ትመግቢናለሽ: thou feedest us.

ትመግብዋቸዋለሽ: thou feedest them.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

ትመግቡኛላችሁ: &c., the same with regard to Infixes as 3d p. pl.

Constructive Aorist.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Masculine.

መግብኛል: he feeds (fed &c.) me.

መግብሃል: } he feeds (fed &c.) thee.

መግብሻል: }

መግብታል: } he feeds (fed &c.) you

መግብዋችኋል: } (s. hon.)

መግብታል: he feeds (fed &c.) him.

መግብዋታል: he feeds (fed &c.) her.

መግብናል: he feeds (fed &c.) us.

መግብዋችኋል: he feeds (fed &c.) you.

መግብዋቸዋል: he feeds (fed &c.) them.

Feminine.

መግባኛለች: she feeds me.

መግባሃለች: } she feeds thee.

መግባሻለች: }

መግባዋለች: } she feeds you.

መግባችኋለች: }

መግባዋለች: she feeds him.

መግባታለች: she feeds her.

መግባናለች: she feeds us.

መግባችኋለች: she feeds you.

መግባቸዋለች: she feeds them.

Masculine.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

መግቢህኛል: thou feedest me, &c.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

መግቢሃለሁ: I feed thee, &c.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

መግባችሁኛል: you feed me.

መግቢሽኛል: thou feedest me.

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

መግቢንሃል: we feed thee.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

መግቢውኛል: they feed me.

Note.—The connexion of Negative as well as other Particles, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, will be noticed in the next Chapter.

CHAP. V.

ON THE ADVERBS.

1. The Amharic Adverbs are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*; and the Separable Adverbs are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The Simple Adverbs, again, are either *Original* or *Derived*. We have to consider, first, the *Simple Original* Adverbs.

2. The Simple Original Adverbs are to be subdivided into two classes; the first of which comprehends such Adverbs as express their ideas by themselves; the second, such as are usually connected with the Verbs አለ: "to say," አደረገ: or አሰኘ: "to do," "to make," "to induce."

(a) *First Class.*

መቼ: "when?"

በንገሥ: "how much?" "how many?"

ቀስ: "calmly," "cautiously," "quietly."

ብቻ: "but," "only," "singly." Is used also with Suffixes in the Accusative: ብቻዎን: "I alone." ብቻህን: "thou alone," &c.

ቸሎ: "quickly," "speedily."

ትላንት: and ትላንትኛ: "yesterday."

አምና: "last year."

ዘንድሮ: "this year."

ገና: "yet." With neg. "not yet."

አሁን: "now."

አንኳ: ስንኳ: Shoa, and Vulgar:

አኮ: "indeed," "even."

አንኳን: "no!"

አንጀ: "but," "except," "not including."

አንጀ: "I do not know."

አወን: "yes!"

ከቶ: "thoroughly," "wholly," "fully." With negative "never," "nowhere," "not at all."

ወትሮ: "always."

ዛሬ: "to-day," "now," "at present."

(b) *Second Class.*

PARTICLE

መር: of leaping, jumping.

ምር: of bitterness.

ልግም: of carelessness, idleness, and eye-service.

ሲጢጥ: of cracking.

ሰፈፍ: of soaring.

ሸተተ: of gliding.

ቀስ: of caution, silence.

INSTANCES.

መር: ይላል: "he jumps."

ምር: አለ: "it was bitter."

ልግም: ይላል: "he acts carelessly," "is an eye-servant."

ሲጢጥ: ይላል: "it cracks."

ሰፈፍ: ይላል: "it soars."

ሸተተ: ይላል: "he slips."

ቀስ: ይላል: "he acts cautiously."

በልጭ: of glimmering, glittering.	በልጭ: ይላል: "it glimmers."
በትን: of scattering.	በትን: ይላል: "he scatters."
ተሎ: of celerity.	ተሎ: ይላል: "he does quickly."
ትፍ: of spitting from between the lips.	ትፍ: አለ: "he spat."
ቸል: of neglect.	ቸል: ይላዋል: "he neglects him."
ኧልል: of shouting.	ኧልል: በል: "shout!"
ኧምቢ: of refusing.	ኧምቢ: አለ: "he refused."
ኧሺ: of compliance.	ኧሺ: ይላል: "he yields, "is willing."
ኧፍ: of blowing, fanning.	ኧፍ: በል: "blow," "fan."
ክትት: of fulness, completion.	ክትት: ይላል: "it is full," "done."
ከፍ: of highness, elevation.	ከፍ: አደረገ: "he raised," "ele- vated," "made high."
ዘም: of silence.	ዘም: አሰኘው: "he silenced him."
ዘቅ: of lowness.	ዘቅ: አለ: "he was low," "stooped."
ዘለግ: of tallness, &c.	ዘለግ: ይላል: "he is tall and stout."
ደስ: of joy.	ደስ: አሰኘው: "he rejoiced," "pleased him."
ደፅ: of slipperiness.	ደፅ: አለ: "it was slippery."
ግሥግሥ: of celerity.	ግሥግሥ: አለ: "he went quickly."
ጪ: of completion.	ጪ: አለ: "it was full," "entire."
ጭቅ: of spitting through the teeth.	ጭቅ: አለ: "he spat thro' the teeth."
ጸጥ: of silence, subsiding.	ጸጥ: አለ: "it became quiet."
ፈቀቅ: of moving forwards.	ፈቀቅ: አለ: "he proceeded," "went further."
ፈግምግ: of gliding.	ፈግምግ: አደረገ: "he made to glide."

Most of these particles seem to be originally intended for mere expressions of the natural sound of certain actions. Such is decidedly the case in ሲጢጥ: ትፍ: ጭቅ: ኧልል: ኧፍ: ዋይ: And their connexion with አለ: "to say," giving the idea that *e.g.* "to crack" is "to say *sit'it*"; to spit," is "to say *teff*" or "*tsh'ek*"; "to shout" is "to say *ellel*" (as is really the custom in the East*); "to blow" is "to say *eff*"; could lead us to rank the whole of this class rather with the Interjections, but that their connection with Verbs prohibits us, though several of these Particles are Interjections as well as Adverbs.

* See, in the Amharic Dictionary, ኧልል::

3. *Simple Derived Adverbs* are very numerous. They are derived from Nouns (Adjective and Substantive), and Verbs, and at least one Pronoun. Those derived from Nouns are not changed in form, but in the sense. Perhaps they may be considered as Accusatives, or having the Preposition **በ**: omitted. Such Nominal Adverbs are the following:

ORIGINAL SUBSTANTIVES.

ሚያ :	{ "outside," "abroad," "within."
ነጋ :	"to-morrow."
ማለፃ :	"early in the morning."
ቅድሞ :	"before," "previously."

ORIGINAL ADJECTIVES.

መልካም :	"well," "properly."
ቅርብ :	"near."
ክፉ :	"badly."
ጸሐፍ :	"well," "safely."
ተላቅ :	"largely," "greatly."
እጅግ :	"much," "very."

Besides these, perhaps every other Adjective may be used adverbially.

Simple Adverbs derived from Verbs:

አይደለም :	"no."
የህል :	"nearly," "about."
ይልቅ :	"more" (<i>magis</i>).
ይቅር :	Particle of forgiveness; <i>e.g.</i>
ይቅር ይላል :	"he forgives."

The Simple Constructive Mood is altogether used for Adverbs; *e.g.*

ደግሞ :	{ "again."
መልሶ :	{ "again."
ማለፃ :	"early in the morning."
ቅርብ :	"near."
ብሎ :	"saying," "thinking."
አብሮ :	"together."
በዙፋን :	"more."
ቀድሞ :	"before," "previously."
አስቀድሞ :	{ "before," "in the beginning."
ጉድሎ :	"wanting," "but."
አድርጎ :	"doing."

Adverbs of uncertain origin are:

በጀ: (Shoa, **ባቡ**: and **ባሰኝ**;) "readily," "with pleasure!"

4. *Compound Adverbs* are formed, (a) by Prepositions and Nouns; (b) by Prepositions and Pronouns; (c) by Nouns and Nouns; (d) by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.

(a) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Nouns.***በውሥጥ:** { “internally,” “within,”
“inside.”**በሜዳ:** { “externally,” “without,”
“outside.”**በደህን:** { “well,” “safely,” “in**በደህንነት:** { health,” “successfully”**በጥቂት:** { “by little,” “in a low
degree.”**በጥቂት: በጥቂት:** { “by little and
little,” “gradually.”**በፎግ:** { “in a high degree,” “in a
great measure.”**በልክ:** { “with measure,” “mode-
rately.”**በፈርሃት:** { “with fear,” “fearfully,”
“shyly,” “cowardly.”**በድፈረት:** { “boldly,” “courage-
ously.”**በደስታ:** “joyfully.”**ከልልብ:** { “from the heart,”
“heartily.”**በፈቃድ:** “willingly.”**ባእምሮ:** { “rationally,” “reason-
ably.”**በቸርነት:** “kindly.”**በምህረት:** { “graciously,” “mer-
cifully.”**በፊት:** “before,” “previously.”**በጥዋት:** “in the morning.”**በቀትር:** “at noon.”**በማታ:** “in the evening.”**በሊት:** { “at night.”**ከድሮ:** “from time immemorial.”**በኋላ:** “after,” “afterwards.”**በቀደም:** “before.”**በረቅ:** “afar off,” “at a distance.”**በታች:** “below.”**ከታች:** “from below.”**ከበኋላ:** “from behind.”**በላይ:** “above.”**ከላይ:** “from above.”**በጣም:** “entirely.”**ለዘላለም:** “for ever.”**ከበፊት:** { “from before,” “from a
former time.”**ከበላይ:** “from above.”**ከበታች:** “from below.”(b) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Pronouns.***በዚህ:** (Shoa, **በዚህ:** { “here,”
& **በዚህ:**) { “herein.”**ከዚህ:** (Shoa, **ከዚህ:** { “here,”
& **በዚህ:**) { “from here,”
“hence.”**ወደዚህ:** { (Shoa,
ወደዚህ: { “hither.”
& **ሀዚህ:**)**እንደዚህ:** { “so,” “thus.”**እንደዚህ:** { “so,” “thus.”**እንደዚህ:** “henceforth,” “hence.”**በዚያ:** (Shoa, **በዚያ:** { “there,”
& **በዚያ:**) { “therein.”**ከዚያ:** (Shoa, **ሀዚያ:**) { “there,”
“from there,”
“thence.”**ወደዚያ:** { “thither,” “after,”
ወደዚያ: { “beyond.”**እስከዚያ:** { “so far.”**ከዚያ:** **ወደዚያ:** “afterwards.”

ከንጊደህ: ወደህ:	{ “from hence- forth.”	አንደት:	“how?”
እስከዚህ:	{ “so far,” “as far as this,” “up to this.”	አንደታ:	“to be sure!”
እስተዚህ:		በስተያ:	“after.”
በየት:	{ “where?”	ለምን:	{ “why?”
ወደት:		ለመንድር:	
ከየት:	{ “whence?” “where- from?”	ስለ: ምን:	{ “wherefore?”
ከወደት:		ስለ: ምንድር:	
			{ “on what ac- count?”

(c) *Adverbs formed by Nouns (Pronouns, Numerals) and Nouns.*

ዕለት: ዕለት:	{ “every day,” “daily.”	ሁለጊዜ:	{ “always,” “continually,” “constantly.”
አፍ: ላፍ:	{ “mouth to mouth,” <i>i.e.</i> “by word of mouth,” “ <i>vivâ voce</i> .”	አንደጊዜ:	“once.” (See Numerals.)
ፊት: ለፊት:	{ “opposite,” “over against each other.”	የዚያን: ጊዜ:	{ “then,” “at that time.”
		ምናልባት:	“perhaps.”

(d) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.*

በረሽጌ:	“by the head-side.”	በግርጌ:	“by the foot-side.”
በጀጌ:	“by the hand-side.”	በደጀጋ:	“near the door,” &c.

5. *Inseparable Adverbs* are but few.

አ—:	{ “not.”
አል—ም:	
አ—ም:	

አል — : non—, un—, in—, &c. **አየ — :** Distributive Particle.

— ን: Interrogative Particle.

The *Negative* Particles **አ — :** **አል — ም:** and **አ — ም:** are joined to the Finite Verb. **አል — ም:** is used throughout the Preterite, and with the 1st pers. sing. of the Present Tense. In the other personal forms, the **ል:** is ejected, and **አ — ም:** remains. The mere **አ — :** is used in the Subjunctive, and in all cases where the Negative Verb receives any additional Prefixes; *e.g.*

PRETERITE.

አልመጣም: "he came not."
 አልመጣችም: "she came not."
 አልመጣህም: "thou (*m.*) } camest
 አልመጣሽም: "thou (*f.*) } not."
 አልመጣሁም: "I came not."
 አልመጡም: "they }
 አልመጣችሁም: "you } came
 አልመጣንም: "we } not."

SUBJUNCTIVE.

አይምጣ: "let him not come."
 አትምጣ: "let her not come."
 አትምጣ: *m.* } "do not thou come."
 አትምጧ: *f.* }
 አይምጡ: } "do not you (*hon.*)
 አትምጡ: } come."
 ላልመጣ: "I must not come."
 አይምጡ: "let them not come."
 አትምጡ: "do ye not come."
 ላንመጣ: "let us not come."

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

አይመጣም: "he } does not
 አትመጣም: "she } come."
 አትመጣም: } "thou dost not
 አትመጧም: } come."
 አልመጣም: "I * }
 አይመጡም: "they } do not
 አትመጡም: "you } come."
 አንመጣም: "we }

With additional Prefixes, which absorb the አ::

ባይሔድ: "if he do not go."
 የማትመለስ: { "(thou) who doest
 not return."
 እንደተደርግ: { "that thou mayest
 not do."
 ሳይበላ: { "without (his) eating,"
 or "before he eats."
 ሳልማር: "before I learn."

አለ—: is prefixed to Infinitives; *e.g.* አለማወቅ: "ignorance," *i.e.* the not knowing, non-intelligence. አለማመን: "unbelief."
 አለመታዘዝ: "disobedience," "insubordination," &c.

—ን: (in Shoa —ወይ:) is a Particle of Interrogation, and affixed to any part of speech; *e.g.* ይህን: ነን: "Art thou well?" እርሱን: ይህን: አደረገ: "Has he done this?"

CHAP. VI.

ON THE PREPOSITIONS, OR PARTICLES OF RELATION.

1. The term "Prepositions" for that part of speech which falls under the consideration of this Chapter, is not entirely suitable. It is a class which determines the relation between Nouns, Pronouns, or Verbs; and which, because in our European languages they are generally placed *before* the

* Mark the difference in pronunciation of the 1st pers. Present from the 3d pers. Preterite. The latter is pronounced "Almat'am"; the former "Alēmat'am." In the 3d pers. sing. of the Preterite, the ለ: is mute; but in the 1st pers. sing. of the Present, it is sounded, because in the latter the Preformative አ: which the ለ: absorbs, must be heard.

object of relation, have been called Prepositions, but would be better called *Particles of Relation*; as this term would suit also in cases where the Particle is placed behind its object.

2. The Amharic Particles of Relation are partly *Simple*, partly *Compound*. The Simple ones are always *Pre-positions*; the Compound ones consist of *Pre-* and *Postpositions*. The Simple Prepositions are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*. The *Simple Separable Prepositions* are the following:

በለ: "for," "for the sake of," "in behalf," "instead of," "in favour of,"
"because," "on account of," "concerning," "on."

ወደ: "to," "towards."

ያለ: "without."

እንደ: "as," "like as," "according to," "in proportion to."

እስከ: "to," "up to," "reaching to," "till," "until."

Inseparable Prepositions are, **ለ—: በ—: ከ—: ጥ—: ገ—:** or **ሀ—:**
እየ—::

ለ—: "to," "unto," "in favour of," "to the benefit of," "belonging to."

በ—: "in," "on," "upon," "at," "by," "through," "with," "against,"
"for (in exchange)," "over."

ከ—: "of," "out of," "from," "(more) than," "to."

ጥ—: "with (company)."

ገ—: or **ሀ—:** vulgar, instead of **ከ—:** and of **በ—::**

እየ—: "in proportion to," "according to," &c., and Distributive.

Illustrations of the preceding Simple Prepositions.

(a) **በለ: እግዚአብሔር:** "For God's sake."

በለ: ንጢአቴ: እሞታለሁ: "I die *on account* (because) of my sins."

በላንተ: መጣ: "He came *on thy account*."

በለ: ወደጄ: ይደክማል: "He labours *for* (in behalf of) his friend."

በለ: ምንድር: "wherefore?"

ይህች: ምዕራፍ: በለ: ሃይማኖት: ትናገራላች: "This chapter
treats *on* faith."

(b) **እንደ: ሰው:** "as a man," "according to (the manner of) men."

እንደ: ጴጥሮስ: "like as," or "resembling Peter."

እንደ: ፈቃዱ: ያደርጋል: "He does *according to* his will," ("as he
likes").

እንደ: ኃይሉ: "In *proportion to* his strength."

(c) **ወደ: ሐበሻ: ሔደ:** "He went *to* Abyssinia."

ፊቱን: ወደርሱ: አደረገ: "He set his face *towards* him."

(d) **እስከ**: (sometimes **እስተ**;) is seldom used without a following **ድረስ**., but sometimes it is used by itself; *e.g.*

እስከ: **ጎንደር**: **ይሔደል**: “It goes *as far as* Gondar,” (“up to Gondar”).

(e) **ለ** — : is used as a Universal Dative; *e.g.*

ለኔ: **ሰጠው**: “He gave it *to* me.”

ለኔ: **ነው**: “It belongs *to* me.”

ለምን: (**ለምንድር**;) “what *for*?” (“wherefore?”)

ለክልኝ: signifies both “send *to* me,” and “send *for* me,” (in my favour, or behalf, to somebody else).

(f) **በቤት**: “*in* the house.”

በእግዚአብሔር: **ያምናል**: “He believes *in* God.”

በወንጌል: **ያስተምራል**: “He teaches (*in*) the Gospel.”

በጥዋት: “*in* the morning.”

በቀትር: “*at* noon.”

በምድር: “on earth,” “on the ground.”

በድንገት: “*on* a sudden.”

በሎንዶን: “*at* (in) London.”

በደጀ: “*at* the door.”

ጸድቅ: **በሃይማኖት**: **ይድናል**: “The just shall live *by* faith.”

በገሐርቱ: **በምድር**: “*By* sea and *by* land.”

በሚያስችለኝ: **በክርስቶስ**: “*Through* him that strengtheneth me; *through* Christ.”

በወርቅና: **በብር**: **ገዛው**: “*With* gold and *with* silver did he purchase it.”

ጸላቴ: **መጣበኝ**: “My enemy came *upon* (against) me.”

ይፈረድበታል: “He judges *over* him” (or, in contrast with —**ለ**—: “pronounces judgment *against*, condemns him.”)

ይቅር: **በላኔ**: **በኛ**: **ያለውን**: “Forgive us that which is *against* us;” *i.e.* “forgive us our debts,” Matt. vi. 12.

በስድስት: **ብር**: **ይሸጠዋል**: “He sells it *for* six dollars.”

ድል: **ነሣበት**: “He gained the victory *over* him.”

(g) **ከቤቱ**: **ወጣ**: “He went *out of* his house.”

ከርሱ: **ወሰድሁት**: “I took it *from* him.”

ከኔ: **ይበልጣል**: “He is greater *than* I.”

ከርሱ: **ያንሳል**: “He is inferior *to* him.”

(h, i) **T:** and **ጥ:** or **U:** are frequently used in vulgar, but not in good language. (See the Dictionary.)

(k) **ኦP—:** is a Preposition, Distributive and of Proportion. It is related to **ኦንደ:** and has been mentioned already with the Numerals as a Distributive Particle. Other instances are these: **ኦዞመደ:** “according to its kind.” **ኦዞረዓቱ:** “in his respective order.”

3. The Compound Particles of Relation are formed by any of the Simple Prepositions, connected with Nouns, or other Particles. The latter (Postpositions) are either directly joined to the former, or follow after the Noun or Pronoun to which they refer. We shall first give here a list of Postpositions; then show how they are combined with Simple Prepositions; and afterwards exhibit their use, by expressions of daily occurrence in conversation.

List of Postpositions.

ወሠጥ: “the inside.”	ዘንድ: }	particles of company.
ኋላ: “what is behind.”	ጋራ: }	
ላይ: “high,” “upper,” “elevated.”	ድረስ:	particle of extent.
ፊት: “face,” “fore-part,” “surface.”	መጠን:	“proportion.”
ታች: “that which is below.”	ልክ:	“measure.”
አጠገብ: “the side.”	በቀር:	particle of omission.
መካከል: “the middle.”	እኩል:	“equal,” “equality.”
ዙርያ: “surrounding place.”	መክንያት:	“reason,” “cause.”
አንጻር: “front.”	ፈንታ:	“portion,” “stead,” “part.”

They are thus combined with Simple Prepositions:

በወሠጥ: and **በ—:** **ወሠጥ:** “within,” “inside.”
በኩል: “about,” “in the vicinity,” “direction.”
በዙርያ: and **በ—:** **ዙርያ:** “surrounding,” “round about.”
በፊት: “before,” “previous to,” “in sight of,” “in front of.”
በኋላ: and **ከ—:** **በኋላ:** “behind,” “after.”
በታች: and **ከ—:** **በታች:** “below,” “under.”
በ—: **ዘንድ:** “by,” “with.”
ከ—: **ዘንድ:** “from,” “from with.”
እስከ: —: **ድረስ:** “till,” “up to,” “to,” “as far as.”
በ—: **ልክ:** “in proportion to.”
በመክንያት: and **በ—መክንያት:** “for the sake of,” “on account of,”
“because of.”

በላይ: and ከ—: በላይ: “on,” “upon,” “above,” “over,” “against.”

ገጠንበ: “beside,” “by.”

በመካከል: and በ—: መካከል: “among,” “between.”

ከ—: ጋራ: “with,” “together with.”

በመጠን: and በ—: መጠን: “in proportion to.”

ከ—: በቀር: “without,” “excepting.”

በ—: ፈንታ: “instead of.”

ገንጸር: and በ—: አንጸር: “in front of,” “opposite.”

Instances for illustration :

በወሥጡ: “within him.”

ገር: ወሥጥ: “within the country.”

በሎንደን: በኩል: “in the vicinity of London.”

ከቀትር: በኋላ: “after midday,” i.e. “in the afternoon.”

በታችኛን: “under us.”

ከሳድቃ: በታች: “under the table.”

በኔ: ዘንድ: “with or by me.”

ከጌታው: ዘንድ: መጣ: “He came from (from with) his master.”

እስከ: ዛሬ: ድረስ: “to this day.”

እስከ: ነጋ: ድረስ: “till to-morrow.”

በዚያ: ልክ: “in that measure,” i.e. so large &c. as that.

በመክንያትህ: “on thy account,” “for thy sake.”

በልጇ: መክንያት: “because of his son.”

በዙርያው: “round about him.”

ገር: ዙርያ: “in the environs of (round about) the town.”

በፊትቸው: ሔደ: “he went before them.”

በምድር: ላይ: “on the earth.”

ከቤቱ: በላይ: “above his house.”

በስፍራ: አጠገብ: “by the side of the place.”

በንጉሥ: ላይ: ተነሣ: “He rose against the king.”

በሰዎች: መካከል: “among men.”

በኔ: በርሱ: መካከል: “between me and him.”

ከባቱ: ጋራ: ሔደ: “He went with his father.”

በውቀቱ: መጠን: “in proportion to his knowledge.”

ሁላቸው: ከርሱ: በቀር: ይጻፋሉ: “They all write excepting him.”

በኔ: ፈንታ: ይቀበላል: “He receives it, instead of me.”

በቤት: አንጸር: “opposite the house.”

CHAP. VII.

ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The *Amharic Conjunctions* are either Separable or Inseparable.

2. The *Separable Conjunctions* are as follows:

(a) *Copulative, and Reiterative*: ደግሞ: “also,” “again.”

(b) *Adversative*, ግን: “however,” “but.”

ደር:	} “but.”	ሳይቀር:	{ “notwithstanding,” “nevertheless.”
ነር: ግን:			
ደር: ግን:		ኣንጂ: “but,” “unless.”	

(c) *Disjunctive*:

ወይ:	} “or.”	ወይስ: —: ወይስ: —:	“either—,” “or—”: with Negation, “neither.”
ወይም:			
ወይስ:			

(d) *Causal*: ኣንጅ: “that.” ዘንጅ: “in order that,” “in order to.”

(e) *Conditional*, ኣንደሆን: (Shoa, ኣንጅ:) “if.”

(f) *Conclusive*, ስለዚህ: “therefore.”

3. The *Inseparable Conjunctions* are these:

(a) *Copulative*, — ሞ: — ፍ: “and,” “also.”

ካ—: ተ—: “and,” “by,” (in counting).

(b) *Copulative and Adversative*:— ስ: — ሳ:: “as for,” “but,” “indeed,”
“but.”

(c) *Conditional*:

ሰ—:	} “if.”	With the Negative ኣ: (ካ:) “if not,” “unless.”
ከ—:		
ሰ—:		

(d) *Conjunction of time*, ስ—: “when,” “while.”

Negat. ሳ—: “ere,” “before,” “without.”

(e) *Final and Conditional*: ኣንጅ—: “that,” “if,” “to.”

ል—: “that,” “in order that.”

(f) *Intensive*, ኣስክ—: “so that,” “so as to.”

ኣስክ—: ደረስ: “until,” “till.”

(g) *Comparative*, ከ—: “than that.”

(h) *Causal*, — ፍ: “for,” “because.”

NOTE.—The junction of these Particles to Verbs is effected according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII.

ILLUSTRATIONS:

ንጉሥ፡ ንግሥት፡ መጡ፡ ሔደዋል፡ “The king *and* the queen came *and* went.”

ደረ፡ ሎላልታቸው፡ ተቀመጡ፡ “*But* their servants remained”; or,
ሎላልታቸው፡ ግን፡ ተቀመጡ፡፡

መቶ፡ ካምባ፡ “One hundred *and* fifty.”

እርሱ፡ ደግሞ፡ እንደህ፡ አለኝ፡ “He *also* told me so.”

ይህ፡ ሁሉ፡ ሳይቀር፡ “*Notwithstanding* all this.”

ይህን፡ አልቻልኩም፡ ያን፡ እንጂ፡ “I do not want this, *but* that.”

ምንን፡ ትፈልጋለህ፡ መጽሐፉን፡ ወይስ፡ ብረን፡ “What doest thou want, the book *or* the money?”

ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ልታድርግ፡ “Either this *or* that must thou do (art thou *to* do).”

እርሱስ፡ እንደ፡ ሔደ፡ አየሁ፡ ነገር፡ ግን፡ አንተ፡ እንድታከት፡ አልሔደም፡፡ “*Indeed*, *that* he has gone, I have seen; *but* in order *that* thou shouldst be lazy, he did not go,” (“was not his object in going”).

እማር፡ ዘንድ፡ (or ልማር፡) እወደለሁ፡ “I like *to* learn.”

መጽሐፍ፡ ገንኝ፡ በወደድሁ፡ “I should like *to* get a book.”

ክትጫወት፡ ብትማረ፡ ይቫልሃል፡ “*If* thou learnest, that will be better for thee *than* if thou playest.”

እንተ፡ ብትለምን፡ እርሱ፡ ቢሰጠህ፡ ነበር፡ “*If* thou wouldest ask, he would give thee.”

ጌታው፡ ሲቀመጥ፡ ሎሌ፡ ይሔዳል፡ “*While* the master remains, the servant goes.”

እስክመጣ፡ ድረስ፡ ቀይደልኝ፡ “Wait for me *till* I come.”

መምጣትስ፡ እመጣለሁ፡ “*As for* coming, I shall come.”

አንተሳ፡ “*But* thou?” (emphatic, “what wilt thou do?”)

ታምዋል፡ አይመጣም፡ “*Because* he is sick, he does not come.”



CHAP. VIII.

ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

1. We notice first those Particles which, when combined with the Verbs **አለ**: **አደረገ**: and **አሰኘ**:, constitute Verbs (See Ch. V. 2.); but when used by themselves, are Interjections. They are the following:

Particles	Signification.	Particles	Signification.
ዝም :	of silence, { "tush!" "quiet!"	አሺ :	of compliance, { "yes," "readily."
ቀስ :	of caution, { "mind!" "softly!"	አምበ :	of refusing, "I will not!"
ቶሎ :	of haste, "quickly!"	አልል :	of exultation, { "hurrah!" "huzzah!"
ክትት :	of completion { "done!" "finished!" "full!"		

2. The remaining Particles of Exclamation are as follows:

ሆይ :	of address, "oh!"	አይ :	{ of commise- ration, } "oh!"
ቆላ :	of expulsion, "begone!"	ወዋ :	of lamentation, { "alas!" "woe!"
አወይ :	of joy, "eh!" "aha!"	ዋይ :	{ of lamentation & abhorrence, { "woe!" "alas!" "fie!"
አነሆ :	of attention, { "look!" "behold!"	ዕፁብ :	{ of asto- nishment } "oh wonder!"
አረግ :	{ contradiction, } "oh!" complaint, } "far be it!" abhorrence, } "fie!"	ወይ ጉድ :	{ of asto- nishment } "dear me!"
አቢት :	{ of courtesy, } "Sir!" of address, } "O Lord!"		
አኮ :	{ of assent, { "to be sure!" "no doubt!"		
አንጂተ :			
ቢዛ :	{ of sudden sympathy, { "I hope you have not hurt yourself!" <i>lit.</i> "substi- tute," <i>i.e.</i> I should have preferred the accident to have happened to me, instead of you!		

PART III.—SYNTAX.
ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS,
AND THEIR
CONSTRUCTION INTO SENTENCES.

CHAP. I.

ON THE NATURE OF SENTENCES, ESPECIALLY IN THE AMHARIC
LANGUAGE.

1. A *sentence* is an aggregate of words expressing a judgment of the mind. It is either simple, complex, or compound. The constituent parts of every sentence are, a subject, an attribute, a copula, and an object; the latter, however, being less necessary than the three former. *Simple* sentences are such as have nothing but these parts; *e.g.*

ምድር፡ ቦፊ፡ ነት፡ "The earth is spacious."

ንጉሥ፡ መጣ፡ "The king has come."

አንበሳ፡ ፈረሰን፡ ገደለ፡ "The lion killed a horse."

NOTE.—The Copula, or Joining Verb, which connects the subject with the attribute, is frequently joined with the latter in one and the same verb; *e.g.* **ንጉሥ፡ መጣ፡** Here **መጣ፡** contains the attribute of **ንጉሥ፡** ("king"), which is, "one that came," together with the Copulative Verb "is."

2. *Complex* sentences are such as are amplified by qualifying words in connection with either the subject or the attribute; *e.g.*

ልጄ፡ ዛሬ፡ መጣ፡ "My son came to-day."

Here is the subject, **ልጄ፡** "son," qualified by the pronoun *é*, "my," and the attribute "who came," (contained in the verb **መጣ፡** "came," with the copula "is,") by the adverb **ዛሬ፡** "to-day."

3. *Compound* sentences are such as have either the subject, or the attribute, or the object, or all of them, augmented by additional or explanatory parts; *e.g.*

ወታደር፡ ነጋዴ፡ ገባረም፡ የሚጠቅሙ፡ ሰዎች፡ ናቸው፡

"The soldier, the merchant, and the farmer, are useful men."

CHAP. II.

ON THE SUBJECT AND THE ATTRIBUTE, AND THEIR RELATION TO
EACH OTHER.SECTION I.—*On the Subject.*

1. The *subject* is the principal or the reigning part of every sentence : it therefore stands always in the *Nominative Case* : *e.g.*

ሰው፡ ይሞታል፡ “man dies.”

2. The ideal subject is always a Noun Substantive: the grammatical subject may be a Substantive, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, an Infinitive, or Participle: for words which express no perfect ideas by themselves, *i.e.* which are not substances, cannot form subjects of thought, unless they be at least ideally converted into substantives.

3. In every sentence, the subject precedes; the attribute and the copula follow; *e.g.*

እርሱ፡ ይህን፡ ነው፡ “He is good.”

This is always the case, whether the Subject be simple, defined, complex, or compound.

4. When the Subject is specified by a Substantive, an Adjective, a Numeral, Pronoun, or Participle, the specifying words precede; *e.g.*

የሰው፡ ልብ፡ ክፈ፡ ነው፡ “Man’s heart is evil.”

በጎ፡ ሰው፡ ይከብራል፡ “A good man is honoured.”

ሰገት፡ ቀን፡ አለፈ፡ “Seven days passed.”

ይህ፡ ቤት፡ ሰፊ፡ ነው፡ “This house is spacious.”

የተሠራ፡ ቤት፡ ሰፊ፡ ነው፡ “The house which has been built, is spacious.”

እግዚአብሔርን፡ መፍራት፡ ከላንት፡ ጋራ፡ ይሁን፡

“May the fear of the Lord be with you.”—2 Chron. xix. 7.

5. A Compound Subject, which consists of several Nouns, Numerals, or Pronouns, has all these parts in the Nominative Case; *e.g.*

ሰማይን፡ ምድርን፡ ያልፋሉ፡ “Heaven and earth shall pass away.”

እልዩ፡ መቶ፡ ከሰማንዮ፡ ሰዎች፡ ሐይ፡ “Those hundred and eighty men have gone.”

6. Where the Subject is connected with subordinate explanatory parts, it follows after them; *e.g.* Luke xii. 47.

**የጌታውን፡ ፈቃድ፡ አውቆ፡ ያልተዘጋጀ፡ እንደ፡ ፈቃዱም፡
ያላደረገ፡ ባርያ፡ እጅግ፡ ይገረፋል፡**

Literally: "His Lord's will knowing who prepared not himself, according to his will and did not the servant, much shall be scourged;" *i.e.* "That servant who knew his Lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be severely scourged."

These two rules, No. 4, and 6, are so peculiarly in the Amharic idiom, that they cannot fail to impress themselves at once upon the mind of the Student.

SECTION II.

On the Attribute, and its relations to the Subject.

1. The Attribute may be a Substantive, or an Adjective, or Pronoun, or Participle: it may be separate, or implied in the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

እግዚአብሔር፡ መንፈስ፡ ነው፡ "God is *a Spirit*."

ይህ፡ ሰው፡ አዋቂ፡ ነው፡ "This man is *intelligent*."

ነገሩ፡ ይህ፡ ነው፡ "The matter is *this*."

ፈቃዱ፡ የተቀረጠ፡ ነው፡ "His resolution is *decided*." Acts xix. 7.

ሰዎችም፡ አሥራ፡ ሁለት፡ ነበሩ፡ "And the men were *twelve*."

እርሱ፡ ይፈራል፡ "He fears," *i.e.* "is *fearing*."

2. Complex Attributes (see Ch. I. 2.) have their subordinate parts before them.

EXAMPLE.

ይህ፡ ሰው፡ በስራው፡ ሁሉ፡ ተንኩላኛ፡ ነው፡

Lit. "This man, in his work all, is cunning."—"is cunning in all his doings."

3. The Attribute always follows the Subject. This is evident from the preceding instances.

4. It often agrees with the Subject in Gender, Number, and Case: often does not. As to the Gender, the concordance may be assumed, most of the Nominal forms being of Common Gender; and, in the Adjective Participles at least, the Gender is strictly attended to. Concerning Number, the Singular is more used in Adjectives than the Plural; which may be accounted for by the supposition, that they are regarded as an abstract mass, of which the individual subjects have their share; *e.g.*

እሌህ፡ ሰዎች፡ ደህና፡ ናቸው፡ "These men are good."

But when the Attribute is a Relative Participle, it must agree in Number,

as well as in Gender, Case, and Person, (see Page 73.) with its subject; *e.g.*

ሎላልቱ፡ የተመኑ፡ ናቸው። "His servants are faithful."

The Number is especially uncertain, when the Subject is a Collective Noun; *e.g.*

ሰው፡ ሁሉ፡ ይሞታል፡ "All men (or every man) dies."

ሕዝቡ፡ ተሰበሰቡት፡ (Sing.) or **ተሰበሰቡ፡** (Pl.) "The people was (or were) gathered together."

With regard to Case, we remember but one instance where the Subject and the Attribute do not agree; **ብቻ፡** with Suffixes; *e.g.*

እኔ፡ ብቻዬ፡ ነኝ፡ "I am alone."

Here is the Subject **እኔ፡** in the Nominative, and the Attribute **ብቻዬ፡** in the Accusative Case.

CHAP. III.

VARIOUS USES AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOUN.

A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives.

1. Two or more Substantives connected together, denoting the same thing, are in a state of apposition, and must agree in Gender and Number; *e.g.*

እግዚአብሔር፡ አምላክ፡ "The Lord God."

ወንድ፡ ባርያ፡ "a man-slave."

ንጉሥ፡ ደዊት፡ "King David," & **ደዋት፡ ንጉሥ፡** "David, the king."

ቫንክሎች፡ ባሮች፡ "Negroes," "slaves"; *i.e.* "Negro-slaves."

2. Nouns of *Quantity* are joined to other Substantives in the Nominative Case; *e.g.*

ጥቂት፡ ብር፡ "a little silver."

አንድ፡ ነጥር፡ ቡን፡ "one pound (of) coffee."

አንድ፡ ጎምቦ፡ ውኃ፡ "one jar (of) water."

3. Substantives of Quality, of Origin, or of Possession, are joined to other Substantives. They stand in the Genitive Case; *e.g.*

የደንጊያ፡ ቤት፡ "a house (made) of stone."

የጤፍ፡ ጣቢታ፡ "Têff-bread-cakes."

ያገር፡ ሰው፡ "a man of the country"; or the Ethiopic expression,
ባላገር።

የገባረ፡ ማረቫ፡ "the farmer's plough."

More about this when we come to speak of the Genitive Case. (See p. 167.)

4. On the construction of Object-Substantives with Subject-Substantives we shall speak when coming to consider the Verb. (See Ch. VIII.)

B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives.

Adjectives may be connected with Substantives, (a) either as epithets to the Subject; or (b) as Attributes of the sentence; or (c) as modified by another accompanying Substantive.

1. As *Epitheton* of a Substantive, the Adjective generally *precedes* the latter; e.g. በጎ፡ ሰው፡ “a good man.”

2. In Number and Gender, the Epithetic Adjective does not always agree with its Substantive; but the following rules are observed:

(a) The Substantive may be in the Plural, and the Adjective in the Singular Number; never the reverse; e.g.

ደህና፡ መጻሕፍት፡ “good books”; never ደህናች፡ መጻሕፍት፡፡

(b) In the same manner, the Adjective is most frequently used in the Masculine form, when the Substantive is of Feminine Gender; but a Feminine Adjective is never used for a Masculine Substantive; e.g.

ክፋ፡ ሴት፡ “a bad woman,” but not ንጽሕት፡* ወንድ፡ “a pure man.”

3. The preceding paragraph refers not to Participial Adjectives of the Relative form, as in them the strictest attention is paid both to Number and Gender. (See Page 163. §. 4.)

4. When the Adjective is *attribute* to the sentence, the rules laid down in the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. §§ 3, 4. obtain.

5. When another qualifying Substantive is connected with the Adjective, a Relative Participle is required as complement; e.g.

በልባቸው፡ ንጽሐን፡ ያሉ፡ ሰዎች፡ “Men who are pure in their hearts.”

C. Number of Nouns.

There is a strong tendency in the Abyssinians to use the Singular Number, where we would use the Plural. We shall point out several cases where the latter never, and others where it but seldom is used, although it would be impossible, in the present stage of our knowledge of the

* We do not quote ክፋእት፡, the Feminine form of ክፋ፡, because it is not used in the Amharic, nor the Participle የክፋች፡; because, when Adjective-Participles are used, the Gender and Number is always strictly attended to. (See the preceding Chap. Sect. II. § 4.)

Amharic language, to give rules for every case, and would exceed the bounds which must be assigned to this head. The following classes are, some of them, never, others, seldom used in the Plural:

1. Nouns denoting a mass; as, gold, silver, corn, wheat, honey, fat, dust, &c.

2. Several parts of the animal body; *e.g.*

ልብ : "the heart."	ሥጋ : "flesh."
ሆድ : "the belly."	ጽጉር : "hair."
ደም : "blood."	

3. The soul, and several powers and faculties of the mind:

ነፍስ : "the soul."	ወድ : "love."
ፈቃድ : "the will."	ፍቅር : "charity."
አሳብ : "thought."	ደስታ : "joy."
ልብፍ : "reason."	አለኝታ : "hope."

4. Most Abstract Nouns, denoting quality, condition, action, quantity. We especially refer to the two Tables of Nominal Forms. Table I: Triliteral Radicals of Verbs, No. 5. and Quadriliteral ones of No. 4. Table II: Simple Forms of 3. A. a. 4. 6.; and Augmented Forms, 1. a. c.; some of *d.*; and almost all of *e.*

5. The following Collective Nouns are not often used in the Plural:

(a) Generical names of animals and of plants; *e.g.*

ጅብ : "hyæna."	አበባ : "flower."
----------------------	------------------------

(b) Names of assemblages of men, or other beings; *e.g.* **ወገን**: "tribe," "sect," "kind," &c. The Plural of this word, **ወገኖች**: signifies the individuals belonging to the whole assemblage. **ሸንጎ**: "court of justice," **አገር**: "town," "country," and other words.

6. Certain periods of time: **ቀን**: "day." **ሌት**: and **ሌሊት**: "night." **ሰዓት**: "hour." **ቀትር**: "noon." **ረፋድ**: "forenoon." These are never used in the Plural number. Seldom: **ጊዜ**: "time." **ዘመን**: "time," "period." **አመት**: "year." **ሳምንት**: "week."

7. Several Nouns denoting confines, borders, shores, &c.; *e.g.* **ደር**: "banks," "shores," "coast." **ደርቻ**: "borders." **ወሰን**: "confines," "borders." **ዘርፍ**: "seam," "hem."

8. As to the agreement in Number between Nouns in the same sentence, either Subjects or Attributes, see the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. 4.; and in this Chapter, A. 1. and B. 2.

D. On the Various Cases of Declension.

1. The *Nominative* is, in common conversation, often improperly used

where the Preposition **ወደ**: should stand; *e.g.* **አንገላላ፡ ሔደ፡** "He went Angollala," omitting **ወደ**: "to."

2. It is applied in answer to the question, How long? How often? How much? *e.g.*

ሶስት፡ ቀን፡ ተቀመጠ፡ "He remained three days."

ብዙ፡ ጊዜ፡ መጣ፡ "He came many times."

አንድ፡ ማደጋ፡ ገብስ፡ "One mādēga (a certain measure) barley."

3. The Genitive Case expresses:

(a) *Possession*:

ያባቴ፡ ቤት፡ "My father's house." **የንጉሥ፡ ኃይል፡** "The king's power."

(b) *Origin*:

የምድር፡ ፍሬ፡ "The fruit of the earth."

የሐበሻ፡ ሰው፡ "A man of (from) Abyssinia," *i.e.* "An Abyssinian."

(c) *Quality*:

የብረት፡ እቃ፡ "Iron furniture." **የደንጊያ፡ ቤት፡** "A house of stone."

Here it supplies the place of Adjectives.

(d) *Measure of time, space*:

የሰባት፡ አመት፡ ስራ፡ "The work of seven years."

የሁለት፡ ቀን፡ መንገድ፡ "Two days' journey."

(e) *Price and Quantity*:

ያንድ፡ ብር፡ ቡን፡ "One dollar's (worth) of coffee."

4. When Prepositions precede the word which stands in the Genitive Case, the **P**: is dropped. See Part I. Ch. VII. 3. B.

5. When an Accusative follows the Genitive, the latter adopts the mark **ን**: of the former, so that the word seems to stand both in the Genitive and in the Accusative; *e.g.*

ያገርን፡ ከተማ፡ አየሁ፡ "I have seen the capital of the country."

የእግዚአብሔርን፡ የምላክህን፡ ስም፡ ከንቱ፡ አተድርገው፡

"Thou shalt not use the name of the Lord thy God in vain." Ex. xx. 7.

6. When the Genitive belongs to several Substantives in apposition, its **P**: is to be applied to each; when to a Substantive preceded by an Epithetical Adjective, it is applied only to the Adjective; *e.g.*

የደዊት፡ የንጉሥ፡ የቢያ፡ መዝሙራት፡ "The Psalms of David, (of) the King, and (of the) Prophet."

የደህፍ፡ ሰው፡ ነገር፡ "The words of a good man."

7. When the Genitive belongs to a Substantive having several Epithetic

Adjectives, the **P:** is applied to each Adjective, and may, or may not, be applied to the Substantive also; *e.g.*

የታላቅ፣ የጠቢብ፣ የገላጠጋም፣ የሰሎሞን፣ ቤተ፡ መቅደስ፡
or **የታላቅ፣ የጠቢብ፣ የገላጠጋም፣ ሰሎሞን፣ ቤተ፡ መቅደስ፡፡**
“The temple of the great, wise, and wealthy Solomon.”

8. The Ethiopic Genitive, or Status Constructus, has been mentioned, Part II. Ch. I. Sect. I. 4. and Sect. V. 2.

9. The *Dative* being formed by the prefixion of the Preposition **ለ:** (*to, for, in favour, in behalf, &c.*) to the Noun, we need only to refer to what has been said, Part II. Ch. VI. 2. *e.*

10. The *Accusative* Case is formed by the annexion of **ን:** at the end: it serves to indicate the immediate or direct action of the Subject upon its object; and is required by all Active, Intensive, Transitive, and Causative Verbs; *e.g.*

ሰውን፡ ለጀጀ፡ “He sent a man.”

Although this rule is very plain, it may not be superfluous to specify it a little. The Accusative is governed—

(a) By the Verb Finite; *e.g.*

መልእክትን፡ ጀጽፈል፡ “He writes a letter.”

ተግባርህን፡ አድርግ፡ “Do thy business.”

በትሩን፡ ይዞ፡ ሔደ፡ “He took his stick, and went.”

(b) By the Infinitive; *e.g.*

በጎውን፡ ስረ፡ መስራት፡ አያውቅም፡ “He knows not to perform (cannot perform) good works.”

(c) By Relative Participles; *e.g.*

ይህን፡ ያደረገ፡ “He who has done this.”

ልጄን፡ የሚወድ፡ “He that loves his child.”

(d) By Nominal Active Participles; *e.g.*

ቤትን፡ ሠራ፡ “One that builds a house.”

11. Besides Active Verbs, there are a few phrases in which the Accusative is used; *e.g.*

መንገዴን፡ አሔዳለሁ፡ “I go my way.”

ቤቱን፡ ገባ፡ “He entered his house.”

ብቻ፡ “alone,” “single,” with Suffixes, assumes the Accusative form, when it is converted into an Adverb; *e.g.*

ብቻውን፡ ነበረ፡ “He was by himself.”

12. When the Noun which stands in the Accusative terminates in a

letter of the third, fourth, fifth, or seventh order, a euphonic **ው** is joined before the accusative **ን**; *e.g.*

ጠገቂውን፡ መንጋውንም፡ በረውንም፡ ቀበሮውንም፡ አየሁ፡

“I saw the herdsman, the herd, the oxen, and the fox.”

12. Relative Participles in ³ህ, standing in the Accusative, have a euphonic **ት** before the accusative **ን**; *e.g.*

የየሁትን፡ የገደሉትንም፡ በረ፡ “The ox which I saw, and which they killed.”

13. Accusative Nouns ending in the sixth order are euphonicallly changed into the second; Accusative Participles, into the first order; the latter receiving a euphonic **ው**; *e.g.*

መልካሙን፡ ጸፂ፡ “good wine.”

የደረገህውን፡ ንጢአት፡ “The sin which thou hast committed.”

14. When a Descriptive Adjective is connected with the Noun standing in the Accusative, the **ን** is not generally affixed to both, but sometimes to the Substantive, sometimes to its epitheton; when the latter is a Participle, to the Participle: *e.g.* it is equally good to say **ደህኖ፡ ሰውን** or **ደህኖውን፡ ሰው፡** “a good man,” but with a Participle; *e.g.*

የበላሽውን፡ እንጅራ፡ “The bread which thou (*f.*) hast eaten.”

15. When several Adjectives are connected with a Substantive in the Accusative Case, the **ን** is put to each of the Adjectives, but not to the Substantive; *e.g.*

ተላቁን፡ ወፍራሙንም፡ በጎ፡ ፍረንም፡ የምትፈራውን፡ ዛፍ፡
ቀረጡ፡ “They cut down a large, thick, and good-fruit-bearing tree,” *i.e.*

“a large and thick tree which bore good fruit.”

16. Concerning the construction of the Genitive with the Accusative, see §. 5.



CHAP. IV.

ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. The Amharic Language has almost the same mode of comparing things with each other as the Hebrew; namely, especially by prefixing the Preposition **ከ**: “of,” “from,” to the Positive Noun or Pronoun; *e.g.*

ከመታከት: መማር: ይኸላል: “Learning is better than to be idle.”

2. In many cases, they add the Postpositive Particle **ይልቅ**: which gives, however, no additional force to the idea of gradation already expressed by **ከ**:; but it stands generally at the end of a sentence, and is used more for Verbs than for Adjectives; *e.g.*

ይህች: ዛፍ: ትረዝማለች: ከዚያች: ይልቅ:

“This tree is tall, more than that one.”

Here it would be equally good to say,

ይህች: ዛፍ: ከዚያች: ትረዝማለች: “This tree is taller than that one.”

3. The Verbs **በለጠ**: “is greater,” **አነሰ**: “is smaller,” “less,” and **ተኸለ**: “is better,” are in themselves of a comparative nature: nevertheless, when brought together with other Adjectives or Verbs for comparison, they require the **ከ**—: as well as Adjectives or other Verbs; *e.g.*

ጥበብ: ከከብት: ይኸላል: “Wisdom is better than wealth.”

ዝሆን: ከአይፕ: ይበልጣል: “An elephant is larger than a mouse.”

አንጎላላ: ከአንኮበር: ታንሳለች: “Angollala is smaller than Ankobar.”

4. Besides the preceding, every verb of quality, condition, or even of action, is capable of expressing a comparison when constructed with **ከ**: for the adjective is contained in that verb; *e.g.*

ተራራ: ከዛፍ: ይረዝማል: “A mountain is higher than a tree.”

ጓጢአት: ከሞት: ትከፋለች: “Sin is worse than death.”

Verbs of action, however, require **ይልቅ**: *e.g.*

ከጴጥሮስ: ይልቅ: ጳውሎስ: ይከመ: “Paul laboured more than Peter.”

5. The Superlative is rendered by **ከሁሉ**: (with Suffixes) and **ከሁሉ: ይልቅ**: *e.g.*

ምድር: ታላቅ: ናት: ዓለም: ይበልጣል: እግዚአብሔር: ግን:

ከሁሉ: ይበልጣል: “The earth is great; the universe is greater; but God is greatest (of all).”

ከሁላቸው: ይልቅ: እርሱ: ተማረ: “He learned more than they all.”



CHAP. V.

ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numeral does not, properly speaking, form a particular part of speech, but is either, as the Cardinals, a Substantive, or, as are the Ordinals, an Adjective, or, as the Distributive, an Adverb. We need therefore to say but little about their Syntax.

2. The Cardinal Numbers are always, when connected with other Nouns, to be considered as in apposition with them; and they always precede; *e.g.*

ሁለት ሰዎች: "two men."

3. All the Numbers, from One upwards, seem to be considered as Plurals; wherefore they are of common gender, except **አንድ:** "one," which has in the feminine, **አንዷት::**

4. Notwithstanding this, the noun to which the numeral is joined, is not always used in the plural number. Although they use, in common language, the singular and the plural indiscriminately, the rule seems to hold good, that the round numbers, ten, twenty, &c. up to a hundred, and the large numbers, as hundred, thousand, ten thousand (**አልፍ:** *μύριοι*), are more frequently constructed with the noun in the singular than in the plural, and the numbers between every ten generally in the plural; *e.g.*

ሁለት ሰዎች: "two men."

ህያ ሰው: "twenty man."

5. The Numbers **ህያ:** **ሥልሳ:** **አርባ:** **አምስት:** **ስድስት:** **ሰባ:** **ስመንዳዊ:** **መቶ:** are generally used for Ordinals as well as for Cardinals; or rather, as they do not like to adopt the ordinal form for those numbers, they place the cardinal behind the noun as a predicate; *e.g.*

መጽሐፍ ህያ: "book twenty," instead of **ህያኛ መጽሐፍ:** "the twentieth book."

6. The form of the Ordinal Numbers is regularly derived from the Cardinals; except, as in our European and in other languages, the first; although in compound numbers that also is used in the regular form; *e.g.*

አሥረ አንደኛ: "the eleventh."

When used in a simple form, **አንደኛ:** signifies "unique," "sole," "only." In enumeration, they use **መጀመሪያ:** "the beginning," or **ፊትኛ:** "the foremost," "first."

7. As for the Distributives, nothing needs to be added to what has been said Part II. Ch. II. §. 4.



CHAP. VI.

SYNTAX OF THE SEPARABLE PRONOUNS.

1. The Separable Personal Pronoun is used,

(a) When it is the subject of a sentence. **ኔ፤ ከሐደሁ፡** "I go," although it is not necessary to use it.

(b) When an emphasis lies on the pronoun; *e.g.*

እርሱ፡ አላደረገውም፡ ኔ፤ አደረግሁት፡ እንጂ፡

"He has not done it, but I have."

2. The third person singular and plural is used for demonstration; as is the reverse in the Latin and Greek; *e.g.*

አሁን፡ ያልሆኑ፡ እርሱ፡ ነው፡ ያልሆነው፡ "That which thou hast now been telling me, is the same with what I told thee."

3. The Separable Possessive Pronoun is used only when a stress is laid upon it; *e.g.* **ይህ፡ ቤት፡ የኔ፡ ነው፡** "This house is mine."

Cf. John xvii. 9, 10: **ያንተ፡ የኛውና፡ ለእኛም፡ የሆነ፡ ሁሉ፡ እርሱ፡ ላንተ፡ ነው፡ ያንተውም፡ እርሱ፡ ለኔ፡ ነው፡** "For they are Thine. And all that is mine, the same is Thine; and Thine, the same is mine."

Where no such stress lies on the Possessive, Suffixes are used.

4. The Singular Masculine of both the *Demonstrative* Pronouns forms Adverbs, by the junction of Prepositions with the Genitive Case of those Pronouns. See Part II. Ch. V. 4. (b).

5. The *Interrogative* **ማን፡** "who?" "which?" "what?" is used for persons: it is made use of, also, for inanimate subjects in the phrase **ማን፡ ነው፡ ስሙ፡** or **ስሙ፡ ማን፡ ነው፡ (ማነው፡)** "What is his (its) name?" On the contrary, the Impersonal **ምን፡** is employed as a Personal Interrogative, by way of utter contempt, in the expression, **ምን፡ አባቱ፡** "What is his father?" Both these expressions are elliptical.

6. The Indefinite **ሁሉ፡**, which may be considered, as it is in the other Semitic languages, as a Noun, **ሁል፡** (هَلْ, كَلٌّ) with suffixes, assumes no other suffix in the singular than the suffixes masculine and feminine of the third person; but it takes all the suffixes of the plural: **ሁሉ፡ ሁልዋ፡ ሁላቸው፡ ሁላችሁ፡ ሁላችን፡**

7. When **ሁሉ፡** is absolute, it stands at the beginning of a sentence: when connected with Nouns or Participles, it follows them; *e.g.*

ሁሉ፡ ሐደ፡ "All is gone."

ሁሉን፡ አደረገ፡ "He has done all."

ሰው፡ ሁሉ፡ "All men," "every man," "people in general," &c.

8. **ሁሉ:**, as subject of the sentence, and without any other suffixes, may have its verb either in the singular or in the plural: when connected with nouns or participles, or with other suffixes, the number and person of the verb are determined by those nouns, participles, or suffixes; *e.g.*

ሁሉ: ይጠፋል: “All will (sing.) perish”; or,

ሁሉ: ይጠፋሉ: “All will (plur.) perish.”

ሁላችን: ባንድ ነን: “We are all together.”

ነገሥታት: ሁሉ: ተሰበሰቡ: ሁላቸውም: ተዋጉ: “All the kings were assembled together, and all of them engaged in war.”

9. **አንድ:** “some,” “something,” “any thing”; with negation, “nothing”; *e.g.*

አንድን: ሰጠው: “Give him something.”

አንድን: አልተቀበልሁም: “I received nothing.”

10. **አያሌ:** signifies an indefinite number or quantity; *e.g.*

አያሌ: ሰዎች: ያምኑታል: አያሌ: ግን: ይጠራጠራሉ:

“Some men believe; others doubt it.”

When it is predicate, it signifies a large quantity:

ከብቱ: አያሌ: ነው: “His property is considerable.”

11. In order to express Reciprocity, the Abyssinians make use of the form **እርሱ: በርሱ—:**, with the Plural Suffixes **ላችን:** **ላችሁ:** and **ላቸው:** and a Reciprocativ or other Verb; *e.g.*

እርሱ: በርሱችሁ: ተዋደዱ: “Love one another!”

12. An Indefinite Pronoun is **አንተን:** which signifies, “The what’s his name.” Gr. *ὁ δεινα*; French, *chose*; German, *Dingerich*; *e.g.*

አንተን: አይሄድም: “The what’s his name does not go.”

CHAP. VII.

ON THE AFFIXED PRONOUNS.

1. As to their position, that is determined, the Nominal Suffixes being joined to the final letter of the Noun (or Adverb); the verbal to the last radical of the Verb, or to the Verbal Afformative. Adjectives do not assume suffixes, except when considered as Substantives.

2. The Nominal Suffixes are to be considered as possessive; the verbal ones as objective; *e.g.*

ልጄ: “My child.”

መታኝ: “He struck me.”

Adverbs with Suffixes are treated by them as Substantives, the nominal Suffixes being joined to them; *e.g.*

በላይ: "over me."

3. Concerning the Verbal Suffixes, enough has been said in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV. sect. V. We add here, that the suffix of the first pronoun in the singular is sometimes used pleonastically; *e.g.*

ሔይሁኝ: "I am gone."

CHAP. VIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE VERB.

Having discussed the nature and use of the Verb, and its various parts, rather extensively in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV., we need not here go through it at full length; but shall offer, in the first place, such additional remarks on the Moods, Tenses, and Persons, as are deemed necessary; and, in the second place, to show the agreement of one verb with another, and of the verb with the other parts of speech.

SECTION I.

On the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.

1. The following Tenses are used for the *past* time: the Simple Preterite of the Indicative, the Compound Preterite of the Contingent, and the Compound Preterite of the Constructive.

(a) The Simple Preterite of the Indicative is used,

α. For the Perfect Tense; *e.g.*

እንገደ: መጣ: "A stranger has arrived."

ሕዝቡ: ተሰበሰቡ: "The people have gathered themselves together."

β. For the Historical Tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect; *e.g.*

ከተራራገመ: በወረደ: ጊዜ: ተከተሉት: ብዙ: አሕዛብ:

"And when he descended from the mountain, many people followed him."

Matt. viii. 1.

ተጸዛዘን: ከፈጸመ: በኋላ: ከዚያ: አለፈ:

"When he had finished his command, he passed over from thence."

Matt. xi. 1.

γ. For the Present or Immediate Future, in a very few instances. So when visitors courteously ask leave to go, they do it by saying: **ሔይሁ:** "I am gone," *i.e.* "If you allow me, I go now." Or when a person is

frequently called, and does not come, he at last answers : **መፃሁ፡ መፃሁ፡** "I come ! I come !"

δ. With Conjunction Prefixes, it serves for the Potential and Optative Moods.—See Sect. II. §. 5. and Isa. i. 9.

(b) The Compound Preterite of the Contingent is used,

α. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative ; *e.g.*

እኔ፡ ሳልመጣ፡ እርሳቸው፡ ይበሉ፡ ነበሩ፡ "Before I came, they had been eating."

β. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Potential Mood :

ብትለምነው፡ ቢሰጥህ፡ ነበር፡ "If thou wouldst ask him, he would give thee."

ይህንን፡ ካላደረግህ፡ ብወድህ፡ ነበርሁ፡ "If thou hadst not done this, I should have loved thee."

(c) The Compound Preterite of the Constructive is used chiefly for the Pluperfect, and sometimes for the Imperfect of the Indicative ; *e.g.*

ሰጥኹ፡ ነበርሁ፡ "I had given."

2. Tenses used for the *Present*, are, the Present of the Indicative ; the Second, or Aoristic Constructive ; and the Contingent with Conjunctions.

(a) The Present Indicative and the Aoristic Constructive are both used for the Present Indicative ; *e.g.*

እርሱ፡ ተጪውትዋል፡ እኔ፡ ዝም፡ እላለሁ፡

"Whereas he is talking, I keep silence."

(b) The Present Indicative is used for both the Present and the Future tenses : the Aoristic Constructive serves especially for an action, condition, state, or suffering, which *continues* ; and therefore, although it is more frequently used for the Present, it is likewise made use of for the Perfect. This peculiarity of both these forms is owing to the Auxiliary Verb Substantive **አለ፡** with which they are composed.

(c) The Simple Contingent Mood serves for the Present as well as for the Future Tenses, when connected with Particles ; *e.g.* the Participles **ምጣመጣ፡** "he that comes ;" **ሲመጣ፡** "when he comes ;" **ሳይመጣ፡** "before he comes ;" Negative assertions : **አይመጣም፡** "he comes not," "will not come ;" Conditional expressions : **ቢጨርስ፡** "if he end," or "if he ends ;" Final and referential : **እንደጽፏ፡** "that he writes." or "write ;" Final : **ለወጣ፡ ጥነሣ፡** "he rose to go out," where it is for an Infinitive ; **ወንድሙን፡ ይረዳ፡ ዘንድ፡ ሐደ፡** "He went to assist (that he might assist) his brother."

3. The *Future* time is generally expressed by the same forms which serve for the Present, except the Aoristic Constructive. Vide 2. a.—In p. 66 of this work we pointed out another mode of a decidedly future form; besides which they make use of the Contingent with **አለ:** or with **ይሆናል:** The one is found in the negative expression, Ezek. xvii. 9: **ሰሩ: ይመዘክ: የለምን: ፍረውስ: ይቀረጥ: የለምን:** “Shall not its root be extracted; and its fruit, shall it not be cut off.” But these two latter forms are not confined to the Future: they are also used for the Present Tense.

SECTION II.

On the Moods of the Amharic Verb.

On this head, we shall add but little to what has been stated Chap. IV. of the preceding part, and in the preceding Section of this Chapter.

1. The *Contingent* serves for the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, and Participial Moods; as is shown in the preceding Section.

2. The *Subjunctive* expresses a desire, or an indirect request, order, command, or obligation.—See p. 72.

3. The Infinitive, as Verbal Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes; but relates to and acts upon other nouns in a verbal capacity; *e.g.*

ለንጉሥ: መተዘዜ: “My obeying the King,” “my being obedient to the King.”

It is, however, likewise constructed as a Noun; *e.g.*

የክርስቶስ: መምጣት: “The coming of Christ.”

ፍረን: ለማፍራት: ተተከለች: “In order to bear fruit was it planted.”

4. The Participles are of the same character, partaking of the nature of Adjectives (as the Infinitive does of the nature of Nouns), and of the Verb, as has been shown in the preceding Part, pp. 72, 73. The Simple forms, however, have more of a nominal; the Augmented forms more of a verbal character. The Augmented forms are verbally flexible through all the persons; besides their being capable of receiving Prepositions, and the Accusative **ን:** marking them as Nouns. **ለቡ: የጸፍ: ሰው: አንድ: ጊዜ: የለውን: ነገር: መለወጥ: አይወድም:** “A man of a *determined* character does not like to change his word *which* he once has spoken. **ፍረውን: ለቃሚ: ደስ: ይለዋል: ዘርን: ከሚዘሩት: ይልቅ:** “The gatherer of the fruit rejoices, more than those that sowed the seed.”

5. There is in the Amharic Language no peculiar form for the Optative Mood: they express it by circumscription; *e.g.*

በሆንስ: ባስተማርህኝ: በወደድሁ: “If it had been, if thou hadst instructed me, I should have liked it.”

SECTION III.

Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence.

1. The Amharic Verb having all the personal forms connected with it, it is capable of including the subject in itself; *e.g.*

ጠበቀ: "he observed." **መታህ:** "thou hast beaten."

And by the aid of Suffixed Pronouns and Prepositions, it is further capable of expressing a whole sentence in itself; *e.g.*

መጣበህ: "He came upon thee." **መታህው:** "Thou hast struck him."

2. But when, as is more usual, the subject is separate from the Verb, the latter should agree with it in gender, number, and person; *e.g.*

ይህች: ሴት: አትሔድም: "This woman does not go."

ሎላልቱ: ተከተሉት: "His servants followed him."

3. Collective Nouns, however, which admit of a Plural, have the Verb sometimes in the Singular, sometimes in the Plural: *e.g.*

ሕዝቡ: ተሰበሰቡ: "The people gathered itself together"; or

ሕዝብ: ተሰበሰቡ: "The people gathered *themselves* together."

4. When there are more than one subject in a sentence, the Verb stands either in the Third Person of the Plural, or it is determined by what is considered as the chief subject; *e.g.*

ወንድና: ሴት: መጣ: "Male and female came."

ንጉሥና: ሠራዊቱ: ተመቱ: "The king and his army were beaten."

When the person who is addressed forms one of the subjects, the Verb follows in the Second Person Plural; *e.g.*

ኪደን: ንብሩም: አንተም: ልትማሩ: ናችሁ:

"Kiddan, Gabru, and thou, (you) are to learn."

When the speaker is included, the Verb is to be in the First Person Plural:

እርሳቸውና: እኛ: ተለዩ: "They and we are separated."

5. When the subject consists of several Infinitives, the number is not multiplied, and the Verb is used in the singular; *e.g.*

መማርና: መስራት: ይጠቅማል: "Learning and working is useful."

But when the subject consists of several Participles, which are considered as Nouns, the Verb must be in the plural; *e.g.*

ሰራቂና: ገደደ: መጡበት: "A thief and a murderer came upon him."

6. Active and Transitive Verbs have their objects in the Accusative

Case: see Ch. III. 10. Transitive and Causative Verbs may have a double Accusative; *e.g.*

መልክኩን: አስጸፈው: "He caused him to write a letter."

But as these Verbs may sometimes be used as Intransitive, the use of Prepositions is frequently applied; *e.g.*

ፈርደበት: "He judged *over* (or *against*) him."

ጸፈበት: "He wrote *in* it."

ሰውን: አስመጣለት: "He caused a man to come *for* (or *to*) him."

7. Intransitive Verbs are generally connected with their objects by Prepositions; *e.g.*

በቤት: ነበረ: "He was *in* the house."

ወደገሩ: ሔደ: "He went *to* his country."

በወምበሩ: ተቀመጠ: "He sat *upon* his chair."

8. When the object of the sentence is another Verb, that is expressed by the Infinitive, or by the Contingent with Conjunctions; *e.g.*

መማር: ይወዳል: "He likes *to learn*"; or,

ይማር: ዘንድ: ይወዳል: "He likes *that he may learn*."

መድገም: ያውቃል: "He can *read*."

9. The reigning Verb should be always at the end of the sentence, whether the object be simple, or complex, or compound; *e.g.*

ሰው: ያልወደደውን: ነገር: አያደርግም:

"What man does not like, he will not perform."

እግዚአብሔር: በትእዛዙ: የከለከለውን: ነገር: ሰው: ያደርጋል:

"What God in His law has prohibited, man does commit."

በእግዚአብሔር: ቃል: እናምን: ዘንድ: በጌጢአተኝንም: አዝነን: የሱስ: ክርስቶስ: የሰራውን: መድኃኒት: በሃይማኖት: እንቀበል: ዘንድ: ወንጌል: ያስተምረናል: "The Gospel teaches us to believe in the Word of God, to repent of our sins, and to receive in faith the Salvation which Christ has wrought out for us."

CHAP. IX.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE REMAINING PARTS OF SPEECH.

As the doctrine of the Particles, *i.e.* Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, has been pretty fully exhibited in the Etymological Part, Ch. V. to Ch. VIII., we do not think it necessary to add any more: and so we finish here the Amharic Grammar, adding only a few Specimens of Common Conversation, and a few Exercises.

PART IV.

SOME SPECIMENS OF CONVERSATION,

AND

A FEW EXERCISES.

I. CONVERSATIONAL MODES OF SALUTATION.

IN conversation, the Abyssinians are very polite towards each other, without using quite such a bombastic style as is common among the Arabs and other Eastern nations. When speaking of the Pronouns and under the Verb, we have mentioned two honorific distinctions for the second person in the singular, and that they speak of a third person of respect in the plural. A neglect of these distinctions is overlooked in foreigners, whilst learning their language; but amongst themselves it is taken as an offence, except with intimate friends, and in a few other instances. In saluting, the various times of the day, the state of health, frequency of intercourse, season of the year, and some other circumstances, are to be regarded as determining the mode of address.

As for the time of the day when persons meet, four times are distinguished, for which four separate Verbs are used; viz. (a) *The morning*, until the sun has finished half his course from the horizon to the meridian, *i.e.* between nine and ten o'clock A.M. During this time, when meeting, the verb **አደረ**: "to spend the night," "to rest," is used in the Preterite: when parting, the verb **ረፈደ**: "to spend the forenoon," **አስረፈደ**: "to make spend the forenoon," or **ዋለ**: "to spend (**አዋለ**: "to make spend) the middle of the day," in the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood. (b) *The forenoon*, from about nine to eleven o'clock A.M. At meeting, they salute each other with the verb **ረፈደ**: "to spend the forenoon," in the Preterite: when parting, with the Verb **ዋለ**: or **አዋለ**: (c) *Noon and afternoon*, to sun-set. When meeting, they use **ዋለ**: in the Preterite: when parting before five P.M., **አዋለ**: when after five, the Subjunctive of **አስመሰኝ**: "to make pass the evening," or Imperative or Subjunctive of **መሰኝ**: "to pass the evening." (d) *Evening and night*, from sun-set to the first break of the day. When meeting, the Preterite of **መሰኝ**: when parting, either the Subjunctive or the Imperative of **አደረ**: "to pass the night," "to rest," or Subjunctive of **አሳደረ**: "to make pass the night," &c. is used.

ይወቅር: "May He (*i.e.* God) be gracious!" and **ይፈወስ**: "May He heal," "restore!" both with Suffixes, is used for addressing sick persons. The former wish also is used when a person sneezes. **ገባ**:, in the Preterite, is used when meeting a person who has newly arrived at the place: in the

Subjunctive with Suffixes, when parting with a person who goes to another country. **ሰነበተ**: "to pass the time from one interview to another," is used in the Preterite, when persons meet who have not seen each other for some time. **አሰነበተ**: "to make pass &c., is used at parting, when they do not expect to meet again for a considerable time. Then they add, **ያገኙን**: "May He bring us together again!" **ከረመ**: "to pass the rainy season," and **አሰከረመ**: its transitive, is used in the same manner.

The following Specimens of Conversation will illustrate the preceding remarks. We choose the imaginary meeting of the servant Gabru, with his master Kiddana Maryam, after his return from an errand to a friend, Aito Malku, who lives in a distant part of the country. The meeting is supposed to take place in the morning.

K. M. **በደህኑ ገባህን ገብረ**:

Hast thou arrived in health (safely &c.), Gabru?

G. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡
ደህኑ ሰነበቱን ጌታው፡፡**

God be praised! Have you, master, been well all the time since I saw you last?

K. M. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡
ደህኑ ሰነበትህን አንተ**:

Thank God! Hast thou been all the time well?

G. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡
እርሰዎን ደህኑ ነው፡፡**

Thanks to God! Are you well?

K. M. **እግዚአብሔር ይመስገን፡፡
ደህኑ ነኝ፡፡ መንገድህን
ቀንቶ ነበረ፡፡**

Thanks to God! I am well. Hast thou had a good journey?

G. **መንገዴ ቀኖ፡፡ ከዚህ ተነ
ሠቼ በሶስት ቀን ደረስሁኝ፡፡
ከዚያም አንድ ቀን ውሌ
ተመለስሁኝ፡፡ በሁለት ቀንም
ተኩል ገባሁኝ፡፡**

I had a good journey. I arrived there in three days after I had started from hence, and staying there one day, I returned, and in two days and a half arrived here.

K. M. **ምንድር ይላሉ አይቶ
መልኩ፡፡**

What does Aito Malku say?

G. **ደህናሉን ደህናሉን ደህ
ናሉን ደህኑ ሰነበቱን እጅጉን
ደህኑ ነዎን ደህኑ ከረመን፡፡
ወደጅነቴ ሰማይና ምድር
ያህል ናት አሉ፡፡ እርሰዎም
የሰደዱትን ነገር ሰጠኋቸው፡፡**

"Are you well? Are you well? Are you well? Have you been quite well since our last interview? Are you well? Have you passed the rainy season well? My friendship amounts to heaven and earth," he said. — What you sent to him

እጅግም፡ ደስ፡ አሉበት። እግ
ዚአብሔር፡ ይስጠዎ፡ እግዚአብ
ሔር፡ ይስጠዎ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡
ያመስግነዎ፡ አሉ፡

K. M. ጉደዬሳ፡

G. እሺ፡ አድርገዋለሁ፡ አሉ።

K. M. በጎ። አሁንም፡ ምሳ
ህን፡ በልተህ፡ ወደ፡ ታመመኙ፡
ሲት፡ ወደ፡ ወልተ፡ ገብረኤል፡
ሐድድ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ይማ
ርሽ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ይፈውስሽ፡
ዛሬ፡ ጥቂት፡ አልቀለልሽምን፡
በልልኝ።

G. እሺ። ሐድሁኝ፡

K. M. እሺ። በደህኖ፡ ያው
ልህ።

G. በደህኖ፡ ያውሎ፡ (ዋሉ፡)

TASFU, another servant, enters, announcing a visitor.

Tasfu. አይቶ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንግል፡
አሉ። ሊገቡን።

K. M. እሺ። ይገቡ።

I delivered, and he was very glad of it, and said, "May God give it (re-ward) you! May God give it you! May God glorify you!" (*i.e.* I am very much obliged to you.)

But how is (what did he say to) my request?

He agreed to do it.

Very well. Now eat thy dinner, and go to Walleeta Gabriel, a sick woman, and (give her my respects, and tell her that I sympathize with her in her illness) say for me, "May God have mercy on thee, and restore thee! Doest thou not feel a little better to-day?"

Very well. I go then.

Very well. (Mayest thou spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

(May you spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

There is Aito Walda Dengel: Shall he come in?

Yes, let him come.

On entering, KIDDANA MARYAM attempts to rise; but AITO WALDA DENGEL hastens to prevent it; saying, ይኑሩ፡ ይኑሩ፡ "Remain remain!" or as usual:

በእግዚአብሔር። በማርያም።

By God! by Mary! (*i.e.* Do not rise.)

W. D. እንዴት፡ አደሩ፡

How have you passed the night?

K. M. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስ
ገን። ደህኖ፡ አደሩን፡

Thank God! Have you passed the night well?

W. D. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስ
ገን። ደህኖ፡ ረፈደን፡

Thank God! Have you passed the forenoon well?

K. M. ንግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስለኝ፡ ንጅጉን፡ ይህን፡ ረፈደ፡

Thanks to God! Have you passed the forenoon very well?

W. D. ንግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስለኝ፡ ገን፡ ምሽተዎን፡ ልጆችዎ፡ ሁሉ፡ ይህን፡ ነበረው፡

Thank God! Are your wife and all your children well?

K. M. ንግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስለኝ፡ ገን፡ ምሽተ፡ ዛሬ፡ ታማላች፡

Thank God! My wife is poorly to-day.

W. D. አይ፡ ሕመማችዋ፡ ምንድን፡ ነው፡

Ah! What is her complaint?

K. M. ሆድዋ፡ ያማታል፡

She has pain in the bowels.

W. D. ተስፈ፡

Tasfu!

T. አቤት፡

Sir!

W. D. ንግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስለኝ፡ ገን፡ ንግዚአብሔር፡ ይፈውሰዎን፡ በልልኝ፡ እመቤትህን፡

Speak to thy mistress in my behalf; saying, "May God have mercy on you! May God restore you!"

T. አሁን፡ ጥቂት፡ ይቀልጃል፡ ይላሉ፡

She says that she feels now a little better.

W. D. እንጊዜህ፡ ያውቁኝ፡ ባልደረገዎንም፡ ይስጡኝ፡

Henceforth, know me (as your friend), and give me a Baldaraba* (a man that introduces me to you).

K. M. እሺ፡ አንተ፡ ተስፈ፡ አይቶ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንግል፡ ቢመጡ፡ ወትሮ፡ አድርሳቸው፡

Very well. Thou, Tasfu, whenever Aito Walda Dengel comes, do thou introduce him.

W. D. ሐይሁኝ፡

I go then.

K. M. እሺ፡ በደህን፡ ያውሉ፡

Very well. May He make you spend the middle of the day well *i.e.* Good bye!

W. D. በደህን፡ ያውሉ፡

May He make you spend the &c.

K. M. አሚን፡

Amen!

* See ባልደረገ፡ in the Dictionary.

2. A FEW EXERCISES.

~~~~~  
SALVATION.

(See Amharic Spelling Book, p. 20.)

አሁንስ፡ እንደህ፡ ሲሆን፡  
 ሰውም፡ ሁሉ፡ እግዚአብሔርን፡  
 በገጠአቱ፡ በድሎታል፡ ከእግ  
 ዚአብሔር፡ ፈርድ፡ ከዘላለም  
 ም፡ ከኅይ፡ በታች፡ ሲኖር፡ እግዚ  
 አብሔር፡ ሌላውን፡ የጸጋውን፡  
 መንገድ፡ ከፈተል፡ በታላቅ፡  
 ምህረቱ፡ የተወደደውን፡ ልጁን፡  
 በፍ፡ ፈንታ፡ ቤዛ፡ አድርጎ፡ በሰ  
 ጠው፡ ጊዜ፡

Now, as it is thus, all men having  
 by their sins offended God, and fallen  
 under the divine judgment and eter-  
 nal damnation, God has opened for  
 us another way, a way of Grace,  
 when He in His mercy gave His  
 Beloved Son as a ransom in our  
 stead.

## BEST USE OF GEOGRAPHY.

(See Preface to the Amharic Geography.)

ደህኑን፡ በጣም፡ ብትማር፡  
 በቤት፡ ተቀምጦህ፡ ወደ፡ ረቅ፡  
 አገር፡ እንደሚሔድ፡ ሰው፡ ትሆ  
 ኖላህ፡ በቀደምም፡ ስማቸውን፡  
 እንኳ፡ ያልሰማህውን፡ አሕዛብ፡  
 መኖርያቸውን፡ ጠባያቸውንም፡  
 ስራቸውንም፡ ንብረታቸውንም፡  
 ከዚህ፡ ታገኛለህ፡ ሁላቸውም፡  
 ወንድሞችህ፡ ኖቸው፡ ሁላቸ  
 ውም፡ ታላቆችና፡ ታናሾች፡ ብል  
 ሃተኞችና፡ አራዊትም፡ በጎችና፡  
 ክፍችም፡ ዘመዶችህ፡ ያባትህ፡  
 ያደም፡ ልጆች፡ እውቃቸው፡ ተ  
 ማርባቸውም፡ ስራቸውንም፡  
 መርመር፡ የምታገኝባቸውንም፡  
 በጎ፡ ነገር፡ ጠብቅ፡ ከክፉም፡  
 ሽሽ፡ ሁላቸውንም፡ ውደድ፡  
 ነፍስህን፡ ትወድ፡ ዘንድ፡ እግዚ  
 አብሔር፡ እንደሚሻ፡ ከሁሉም፡  
 ይልቅ፡ እንደህ፡ በለህ፡ ነፍስህን፡

If thou learn this (Geography)  
 perfectly, thou wilt, even whilst re-  
 maining at home, become like a  
 man that goes into a distant coun-  
 try: and of nations, whose very name  
 thou didst not hear before, thou  
 wilt find here their residences, their  
 nature, employments, their state and  
 conditions. And all these are thy  
 brethren; all of them, great and  
 little, civilized and barbarians, good  
 and evil, are thy relations, the sons  
 of Adam, thy father. Know them,  
 learn of them; and examine into  
 their works. Whatever thou findest  
 good in them, keep, and flee from  
 evil. Love them all, as God wills  
 that thou shalt love thyself. But  
 above all things, ask thyself, saying,







